

THE UNIVERSITY
OF ILLINOIS
LIBRARY

478.2
Sm6L

m

Return this book on or before the
Latest Date stamped below. A
charge is made on all overdue
books.

U. of I. Library

OCT 1 1941

APR 18 1956

JUL 17 1956

NOV 9 6 2000



The Appian Way.

LATIN LESSONS

BY

M. L. SMITH

HIGH SCHOOL, GALESBURG, ILLINOIS

Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci. — HORACE

ALLYN AND BACON

Boston and Chicago

LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
CHICAGO, ILL.

COPYRIGHT, 1913,
BY M. L. SMITH.

TDO

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

478.2
sm 68

LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS
URBANA

2715 Bishop

Emergency Classics 6 No. 15 88

PREFACE

THE author has had four chief aims in the preparation of this book: to make the Latin language seem alive; to make the first year's study of value for general culture; to minimize the difficulties of beginning Latin; to prepare thoroughly for the second year's work.

I. *To make Latin seem alive:*—

Every lesson contains familiar quotations and special work on derivatives to show how much Latin still lives in our own language.

A host of familiar Latin phrases and sayings are introduced. Each chapter begins with a quotation.

A special appendix emphasizes the value of Latin in science, mathematics, and especially in English.

II. *No effort has been spared to make the book of value for general culture to those who go no farther than the first year, as well as for those who continue the study of Latin.*

The commonest Latin quotations are given and fully explained.

Interesting stories of Rome bring out ideals of old Roman virtue.

Over sixty illustrations, and a number of descriptions, give an idea of the life of the people and of the City of Rome.

III. *To minimize the difficulties of the first year:*

The number of constructions is small, but there are a great many sentences for drill.

The vocabularies of the lessons contain a total of only 569 words—an average of only eight words to a lesson.

The principles of English grammar are restated and referred to constantly in direct connection with the Latin rules.

Specific directions for translating are given in connection with the exercises.

The accent is marked in the vocabularies and paradigms.

Each rule is simply worded and is illustrated by English sentences followed by the Latin.

Not only the forms, but the rules of syntax, are summarized in the appendix.

IV. *To prepare thoroughly for the second year the following features have been made prominent:*

Practically all the words occur in Caesar.

Phrases used by Caesar are given for oral work.

Sentences from Caesar are frequent, and their number increases toward the end of the book.

The most interesting parts of the Gallic War are given in the appendix, together with notes and a map.

The learning of forms is a prominent feature of each chapter.

The Subjunctive is introduced gradually and with great care.

Reviews—fifteen in all—contain Derivative Work, Word Drill, Form Drill, Syntax Drill, Review Sentences, and Roman Stories for sight reading.

In the selection of vocabulary and syntax, Lodge's "Word List" and Byrne's "Syntax of High School Latin" have been closely followed.

The entire book is the outgrowth of classroom work. It has been thoroughly tested for several years in the author's classes.

M. L. SMITH.

GALESBURG, ILLINOIS,
April, 1913.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS	ix
INTRODUCTION	xi
LESSON	
I. THE LATIN LANGUAGE	1
II. FIRST DECLENSION	3
III. PRESENT INDICATIVE	5
IV. SECOND DECLENSION	8
V. SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER. ADJECTIVES . . .	11
VI. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS. INDIRECT OBJECT .	16
VII. ADJECTIVES (<i>Continued</i>). ABLATIVE OF MEANS .	21
VIII. PERFECT TENSES. EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE . .	25
IX. REVIEW	30
X. THIRD DECLENSION	32
XI. THIRD DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT	35
XII. THIRD DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION . .	38
XIII. THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS	43
XIV. REVIEW	47
XV. PASSIVE VOICE. ABLATIVE OF AGENT	50
XVI. THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES	54
XVII. THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (<i>Continued</i>) .	57
XVIII. SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE	59
XIX. REVIEW	62
XX. POSSUM. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE	64
XXI. THIRD CONJUGATION. APPPOSITION	66
XXII. THIRD CONJUGATION. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE . .	70

LESSON	PAGE
XXIII. THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE	72
XXIV. REVIEW	75
XXV. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	77
XXVI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN <i>-er</i> AND <i>-lis</i>	80
XXVII. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES	83
XXVIII. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	86
XXIX. REVIEW	89
XXX. FOURTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE	91
XXXI. FIFTH DECLENSION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	94
XXXII. FOURTH CONJUGATION	97
XXXIII. FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE	100
XXXIV. ADJECTIVES OF PECULIAR DECLENSION	102
XXXV. REVIEW	105
XXXVI. INFINITIVES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE	108
XXXVII. Duo AND Très	112
XXXVIII. THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN <i>-iō</i>	115
XXXIX. NUMERALS	117
XL. PREPOSITIONS	119
XLI. REVIEW	121
XLII. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	124
XLIII. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE (<i>Continued</i>)	127
XLIV. SEQUENCE OF TENSES	130
XLV. DEPONENT VERBS	133
XLVI. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT	136
XLVII. REVIEW	139
XLVIII. RELATIVE PRONOUN	141
XLIX. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS	144
L. PERSONAL PRONOUNS	147
LI. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS	150
LII. Ferō AND ITS COMPOUNDS	153
LIII. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS	155
LIV. DOUBLE QUESTIONS	158

CONTENTS

vii

LESSON	PAGE
LV. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS	161
LVI. REVIEW	164
LVII. PARTICIPLES	166
LVIII. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	169
LIX. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH <i>cum</i>	172
LX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	175
LXI. REVIEW	180
LXII. IMPERATIVES. COMMANDS	182
LXIII. <i>Volō, nōlō, mālō.</i> DATIVE OF PURPOSE	185
LXIV. SEMI-DEONENTS. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR	187
LXV. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE	189
LXVI. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS	192
LXVII. IMPERSONAL VERBS	195
LXVIII. REVIEW OF CASES	198
LXIX. REVIEW OF CASES (<i>Continued</i>)	200
LXX. REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVES	203
LXXI. INDIRECT DISCOURSE. GENERAL RULES	205

APPENDIX

ENGLISH AND LATIN

An English-Latin Letter	207
Latin in Science	208
State Mottoes	209
Latin Words in the Constitution	209
Latin Phrases	210
Abbreviations from Latin Words	211
Latin Quotations	212

SONGS

<i>Flevit Lepus Parvulus</i>	215
<i>Dies Festus Hodie!</i>	216
<i>Domine Salvam Fac</i>	216
<i>Gaudeamus Igitur</i>	217
<i>Integer Vltae</i>	218

	PAGE
INFLECTIONS	219
RULES OF SYNTAX	249
ENGLISH GRAMMAR AS AN AID TO THE STUDY OF LATIN	254
SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR	262
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	275
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	299
INDEX	313

ILLUSTRATIONS

The Appian Way	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE
1. A Roman Trumpet	3
2. Roman Writing Materials	4
3. Roman Manuscripts	7
4. Legatus	10
5. Storming a Town	13
6. Via Appia	14
7. The Appian Way farther from Rome	15
8. Wall and Ditch	18
9. Roman Standards and Standard Bearers	20
10. Roman Sword and Javelin	23
11. The Colosseum seen through the Arch of Titus	24
12. A Roman Candelabrum	28
13. A Roman Street Scene — (Barber Shop of Licinius)	<i>facing</i> 30
14. Imperator	34
15. Caesar	37
16. Soldiers of the Legion	41
17. The Roman Arena at Verona	42
18. A Roman Gate	45
19. The Temple of Vesta at Rome	46
20. A Roman Aqueduct in Southern France	49
21. Roman Centurion	53
22. A Roman Ship	55
23. A Roman Altar	58
24. The Porta San Paolo	61
25. A Street in Pompeii	63
26. Roman Bow, Arrow, and Javelin	68
27. Roman Boxers	69
28. Roman Cavalry	74
29. A Bridge near Rome	76
30. A Roman Triumph	<i>facing</i> 78

	PAGE
31. Caesar's Famous Bridge across the Rhine	79
32. The Arch of Titus at Rome	82
33. Light-armed Roman Soldier	85
34. Cicero	88
35. Cornelia and Her Jewels	90
36. The Central Court of a House in Pompeii	96
37. The Goddess Juno	103
38. The Way of the Tombs, in Pompeii	104
39. The Forum in Ancient Rome <i>facing</i>	106
40. A Roman in the Toga	107
41. A Roman Altar	118
42. The Tarpeian Rock at Rome	123
43. Augustus Caesar	125
44. The Roman Forum To-day	128
45. The Arch of Constantine at Rome	135
46. The Forum at Pompeii	138
47. The Ruins of Trajan's Villa near Rome	143
48. A Roman Sword	146
49. A Roman Sword in its Sheath	146
50. Spring—an Ancient Festival <i>facing</i>	152
51. The Roman Goddess Minerva	157
52. A German Bodyguard	159
53. A Roman Urn	160
54. Roman Arms	163
55. A Roman Chariot Race <i>facing</i>	166
56. The Colosseum <i>facing</i>	174
57. Cicero delivering the First of his Famous Orations against Catiline	179
58. The Court of a Roman House <i>facing</i>	181
59. The Temple of Apollo in Pompeii	194
60. A Vestal Virgin	197
61. Julius Caesar. (From a Bust in Naples)	202
62. The Tomb of Emperor Hadrian at Rome	204
63. The Colosseum at Rome	206
Map of Italy and Gaul <i>following</i>	262

INTRODUCTION

THE ALPHABET

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no **j** and no **w**. **I** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel: **eius**, **iubeō**.

(a) The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**.

(b) The diphthongs are **ae, au, oe, ei, eu, ui**.

(c) The double consonants are **x** (= *cs* or *gs*) and **z** (= *ds*).

PRONUNCIATION

VOWELS

The *quantity* of a vowel refers to the length of time given to its pronunciation. A vowel is either long or short. Twice as much time should be given to the pronunciation of a long vowel as to a short one. A long vowel is marked **-**. The sounds are as follows :

LONG

ā as in *father*: **lātus**.

ē as in *they*: **lātē**.

ī as in *machine*: **dīcō**.

ō as in *old*: **mōns**.

ū as in *rude*: **mūrus**.

SHORT

a as in *idea*: **ab**.

e as in *net*: **et**.

i as in *cigar*: **in**.

o as in *wholly*: **rosa**.

u as in *put*: **sub**.

DIPHTHONGS

ae like *ai* in *aisle*: **prae**.

au like *ow* in *how*: **laudō**.

oe like *oi* in *oil*: **proelium**.

ei like *ei* in *reign*: **hei**.

eu like *eu* in *feud*: **neuter**.

ui like *we*: **cui** (*kwe*).

CONSONANTS

c like *c* in *can*: **castra**.

g like *g* in *get*: **gerō**.

s like *s* in *yes*: **cōnsul**.

t like *t* in *tin*: **tertia**. (Never soft like *sh*.)

v like *w* in *went*: **ventus**.

z like *dz* in *adze*.

i (consonant) has the sound of *y* in *yet*: **iubeō**.

ch has the sound of *k*: **pulcher**.

bs and **bt** have the sound of *ps* and *pt*: **urbs**, **obtimeō**.

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

The quantity of vowels should be learned by observation. A few rules, however, are given:

- (a) A vowel is long before **nf**, **ns**, **nx**, and **nct**; also when it is the result of contraction.
- (b) A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, and before **nd** or **nt**.

SYLLABLES

There are as many syllables in Latin words as there are vowels or diphthongs, **mī'les**, **lau'dant**, **pu el'la**, **per suā'dē**.

In the division of words into syllables,

- (a) A single consonant goes with the following vowel; as in **fe'rō**.
- (b) If two or more consonants are between two vowels, the division is generally made before the last consonant, as **ma gis'ter**.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

A syllable is long or short, according to the time required in pronouncing it.

- (a) A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.
- (b) A syllable is generally long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or by *x* or *z*.
- (c) Otherwise a syllable is short.

ACCENT

- (a) Words of two syllables are always accented on the first, as **mēn'sa**.
- (b) Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (the next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise on the antepenult (the one before the penult): **Rō mā nō'rum**, **in'co lae**.

GENDER ¹

The gender of the great majority of Latin nouns is determined by the ending of the nominative singular. The rules for the gender of such nouns are given with the various declensions. The following general rules, however, may be a help to pupils in determining gender:

- (a) Names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine.
- (b) Names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine.
- (c) Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are neuter.

¹ Compare § 667, *a*.

LATIN LESSONS

LESSON I

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

*Labor omnia vincit. — Work wins everything.**

1. **Latin and English.** — Latin was the language of the people who inhabited ancient Latium. The chief city of Latium was Rome. The conquests of the Romans made Latin the principal language not only of Italy but of all Western Europe. The modern languages of Italy, France, Spain, and Portugal are directly derived from Latin.

About half our English words have a Latin origin, and many Latin terms are used in law, medicine, and the sciences. Aside from these terms many other Latin words come directly into English without any change of form whatever, as *labor* and *animal*. But most come indirectly into English; they are derived from the different forms which Latin words assume in various constructions. It is necessary to know these forms in order to read Latin, and it is of great practical value in English to know them, so that we may quickly recognize the spelling and meaning of words by comparing them with their Latin equivalents.

2. Latin nouns have six cases: the **nominative**, **genitive**, **dative**, **accusative**, **vocative**, and **ablative**. The table

* Literally: *Labor conquers all things.* The motto of Oklahoma.

below shows their uses and their English equivalents.

Latin case	Use in the sentence	English case
Nominative	Subject	Nominative
Genitive	To denote possession and so on	Possessive or the objective with <i>of</i>
Dative	Indirect object	The objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i>
Accusative	Direct object	Objective
Vocative	Case of address	Nominative independent
Ablative	Adverbial phrases	The objective with <i>by</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>on</i> , <i>with</i> , etc.

3. *Tell what case in Latin is used to express each noun in the following sentences :*

1. Work wins everything. 2. The boy's books are on the table. 3. Mark gave his pencil to his sister. 4. Caesar was an enemy of the Gauls. 5. The girl gave her friend Julia a gift. 6. Lucius, give your sister that book on the table.

4. **Latin Forms. Declension.** — In English the form of a noun changes only in the possessive and the plural. The objective is like the nominative, and the same form is used with a preposition to show other relations.

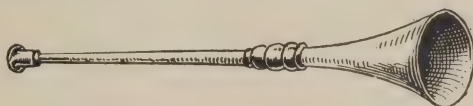
In Latin a noun usually changes its form not only for the possessive and plural, but for the objective case as well. And many uses which in English are indicated by prepositions are shown in Latin by changing the form of the noun. These changes in the form are made by adding certain endings to a permanent part of the word which we call the **base**. To **decline** a noun is to give all its different forms in their regular order. These forms taken together are called the **declension** of a noun.

LESSON II

FIRST DECLENSION

*Experientia docet. — Experience is the best teacher.**

5. Nouns of the **first declension** end in **-a** in the nominative and in **-ae** in the genitive. They are feminine, except a few which are obviously masculine from their meaning ; as *agricola*, *farmer*.



6. **Tu'ba**, fem., *a trumpet*. BASE, **tub-**

CASES	SINGULAR	TERMINA- TIONS	PLURAL	TERMINA- TIONS
Nom.	tu'ba, <i>a trumpet</i>	a	tu'bae, <i>trumpets</i>	ae
Gen.	tu'bae, <i>of a trumpet</i>	ae	tubā'rum, <i>of trumpets</i>	ārum
Dat.	tu'bae, <i>to a trumpet</i>	ae	tu'bīs, <i>to trumpets</i>	īs
Acc.	tū'bam, <i>a trumpet</i>	am	tu'bās, <i>trumpets</i>	ās
Abl.	tu'bā, <i>by or with a trumpet</i>	ā	tu'bīs, <i>by or with trumpets</i>	īs

(a) The vocative case is omitted in the paradigms, since it is generally like the nominative.

(b) The base is obtained by dropping the termination of the genitive singular : **tubae**, base **tub-**.

7. VOCABULARY

<i>agri'cola</i> , -ae, ¹ m., <i>farmer</i> . 3	<i>pīctū'ra</i> , -ae, f., <i>picture</i> . 2
<i>a'qua</i> , -ae, f., <i>water</i> . 1	<i>prōvin'cia</i> , <i>prōvin'ciae</i> , f., <i>province</i> . 3
<i>Gal'lia</i> , <i>Gal'liae</i> , f., <i>Gaul</i> . 3	<i>ter'ra</i> , -ae, f., <i>earth, land</i> . 3
<i>lit'tera</i> , -ae, f., <i>letter</i> (of the alphabet) ; pl., <i>letter, epistle</i> . 2	<i>tu'ba</i> , -ae, f., <i>trumpet</i> . 3

* Literally : *Experience teaches*.

¹ In the vocabularies the genitive singular ending is placed after the nominative to indicate the declension.

8. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

aquatic terrestrial literature agriculture

(a) Decline these nouns like **tuba**. Avoid accenting the last syllable.

EXERCISES

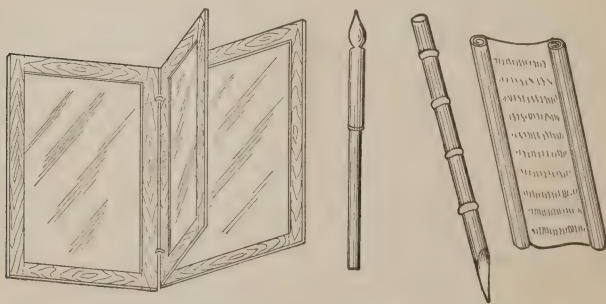
9. *Pronounce, give case and number, and translate:*¹

1. Galliā. 2. Litterīs (*two ways*). 3. Terra. 4. Prō-
vinciāe (*three ways*). 5. Agricolārum. 6. Galliam. 7. Terrā.
8. Tubārum. 9. Tubae (*three ways*). 10. Pictūrās.

10. *Translate; mark all long vowels in written work:*

1. With the farmers. 2. Of Gaul. 3. In the provinces.
4. The earth (*acc.*). 5. The farmers (*acc.*). 6. Of the water.
7. For the provinces. 8. With a trumpet. 9. By a letter.
10. Of the pictures.

¹ There is no word in Latin for *a*, *an*, or *the*. Translate **tuba**, *trumpet*, *a trumpet*, *the trumpet*, according to the sense.



Roman Writing Materials.

LESSON III

PRESENT INDICATIVE

*Excelsior.—Onward and upward.**

11. The **person** of a Latin verb is shown by its ending, which is called the **personal ending**. On account of these personal endings, it is not necessary for a verb to have its pronoun subject expressed.

The following are the regular personal endings of the active voice :

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
<i>First Person.</i>	-ō or -m , <i>I.</i>		-mus , <i>we.</i>
<i>Second Person.</i>	-s , <i>thou, you.</i>		-tis , <i>you.</i>
<i>Third Person.</i>	-t , <i>he, she, it.</i>		-nt , <i>they.</i>

12. Por'tō, I carry

Present Indicative Active

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
1.	por'tō, <i>I carry.</i>	1.	portā'mus, <i>we carry.</i>
2.	por'tās, <i>you carry.</i>	2.	portā'tis, <i>you carry.</i>
3.	por'tat, <i>he carries.</i>	3.	por'tant, <i>they carry.</i>

Note.—Latin has no progressive or emphatic forms. **Portō** means *I carry, I am carrying, I do carry.*

13. VOCABULARY

fā'bula, -ae, f., <i>story.</i>	a'mō, <i>I love.</i>
lin'gua, -ae, f., <i>tongue, language.</i>	lau'dō, <i>I praise.</i>
memo'ria, memo'riae, f., <i>memory.</i>	nār'rō, <i>I tell.</i>
pa'tria, pa'triae, f., <i>country, native land.</i>	oc'cupō, <i>I seize.</i>
puel'la, -ae, f., <i>girl.</i>	pa'rō, <i>I prepare.</i>
sil'va, -ae, f., <i>forest, woods.</i>	por'tō, <i>I carry.</i>
	pug'nō, <i>I fight.</i>

(a) Decline each of these nouns like **tuba**.

(b) Conjugate each of the verbs like **portō**.

* The motto of New York State and the title of a poem by Longfellow.
Literally: *Higher*.

14. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fable	linguist	patriot	silvan
laud	narrate	portable	pugnacious

RULES

15. **Subject.**—The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

The girl loves. **Puella amat.**

The farmers are fighting. **Agricolae pugnant.**

16. **Direct Object.**—The direct object is in the accusative case.

I am telling a story. **Fābulam nārrō.**

We love our native land. **Patriam amāmus.**

17. **Agreement of Verb.**—A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

The girls are telling the story. **Puellae fābulam nārrant.**

The farmer is carrying the letters. **Agricola litterās portat.**

EXERCISES

18. *Translate,¹ and give the construction² of each noun:*

(a) 1. Agricola patriam amat. 2. Galliam occupat. 3. Laudāmus. 4. Silvīs. 5. Fābulās nārrātis.

(b) 1. Linguīs. 2. Pugnō. 3. Pictūram portat. 4. Prōvinciam occupātis. 5. Parāmus litterās.

19. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(a) 1. You (*plural*) fight. 2. They praise (their)³ native land. 3. We love. 4. I am carrying the trumpets. 5. The farmers carry water.

¹ Notice that the regular Latin order is subject, object, verb.

² By construction we mean the case and rule.

³ Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.

(b) 1. A girl is telling the story. 2. They seize the province. 3. We are seizing Gaul. 4. She carries the pictures. 5. You (*singular*) are preparing a letter.

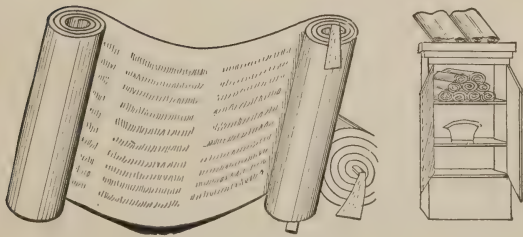
20. Latin Questions. — When asking a question which may be answered either by *yes* or by *no*, append **-ne** to the emphatic word, usually the first word.

The answer *yes* or *no* may be expressed by repeating the sentence to express an affirmative answer, or by repeating it with the negative word **nōn**, *not*, to express a negative answer.

ORAL EXERCISE

21. *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary:*

1. Portāsne litterās? 2. Fābulāsne nārrat? 3. Amāsne patriam? 4. Puellāsne laudātis? 5. Portōne litterās?



Roman Manuscripts.

LESSON IV

SECOND DECLENSION

Errare humanum est. — To err is human.

22. There are **five declensions** of Latin nouns. They are distinguished by the ending of the *genitive singular*. Nouns of the second declension end in **-ī** in the genitive singular. They are *masculine* if they end in **-us**, **-er**, or **-ir** in the nominative singular.

23. **Amī'cus**, m., *friend*. **Pu'er**, m., *boy*. **A'ger**, m., *field*.

	BASE, amīc-	BASE, puer-	BASE, agr-	
				SINGULAR
				TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	amī'cus	pu'er	a'ger	us,—
<i>Gen.</i>	amī'cī	pu'erī	a'grī	ī
<i>Dat.</i>	amī'cō	pu'erō	a'grō	ō
<i>Acc.</i>	amī'cum	pu'erum	a'grum	um
<i>Abl.</i>	amī'cō	pu'erō	a'grō	ō
				PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	amī'cī	pu'erī	a'grī	ī
<i>Gen.</i>	amī'cō'rum	puerō'rum	agrō'rum	ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	amī'cīs	pu'erīs	a'grīs	īs
<i>Acc.</i>	amī'cōs	pu'erōs	a'grōs	ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	amī'cīs	pu'erīs	a'grīs	īs

(a) Nouns of the second declension ending in **us** like **amīcus** have the vocative singular in **-e**, as **amīce**, *O friend!*

(b) **Filius** and proper nouns ending in **-ius**, form their vocative singular in **-ī** instead of **-ie**.

Nouns of the second declension ending in **-ius** and **-ium** regularly form their genitive singular in **-ī** instead of **-iī**. The accent rests on the penult.

24. Conjugation of *sum*, *I am*. An irregular verb.

Present Indicative Active

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>sum</i> , <i>I am</i> .	<i>sumus</i> , <i>we are</i> .
2. <i>es</i> , <i>thou art (you are)</i> .	<i>estis</i> , <i>you are</i> .
3. <i>est</i> , <i>he, she, it is</i> .	<i>sunt</i> , <i>they are</i> .

25.

VOCABULARY

<i>a'ger</i> , <i>a'grī</i> , m., <i>field</i> .	<i>nūn'tius</i> , <i>nūn'tī</i> , m., <i>messenger</i> .
<i>amī'cus</i> , -ī, m., <i>friend</i> .	<i>pu'er</i> , -ī, m., <i>boy</i> .
<i>e'quus</i> , <i>e'quī</i> , m., <i>horse</i> .	<i>vir</i> , -ī, m., <i>man</i> .
<i>lēgā'tus</i> , -ī, m., <i>lieutenant, ambas-</i> <i>sador</i> .	<i>sum</i> , <i>I am</i> . <i>et</i> , <i>conjunction, and</i> .

26. What Latin words do the following suggest?

legate	puerile	amicable
equine	virile	agrarian

RULES

27. **Possession.** — Possession is denoted by the genitive case.

The man's horse. **Equus virī.**

A friend of the ambassador. **Amīcus lēgātī.**

28. **Predicate Nominative.** — A noun used in the predicate after an intransitive verb is in the nominative case. This is called the *predicate nominative*.¹ Adjectives and pronouns are used in this construction the same as nouns, and are called *predicate adjectives* and *predicate pronouns*.

The boy is a messenger. **Puer est nūntius.**

The girl's friend is a lieutenant. **Amīcus puellae lēgātus est.**

¹ Compare the English, § 670.

EXERCISES

29. *Read the Latin and translate:*

- (a) 1. Sumus amīcī. 2. Nūntiī sunt agricolae. 3. Amīcus puerī est lēgātus. 4. Agricola et lēgātus amīcī sunt.¹ 5. Nārrās fābulās.



Legatus.

- (b) 1. Virī sunt lēgātī. 2. Amīcus puellae agricola est. 3. Lēgātī pugnant et Galliam occupant. 4. Lēgātus nūntium laudat. 5. Puer litterās lēgātī portat.

30. *Translate, giving special attention to noun and verb endings:*

- (a) 1. You are farmers. 2. The boy and the girl are friends. 3. The farmer's native land is Gaul. 4. I am a messenger. 5. We seize the provinces.

- (b) 1. The boys carry trumpets. 2. The girl praises the boy's memory. 3. The farmers are carrying the lieutenants' letters. 4. The boy and the girl

praise the farmer's horses. 5. The messenger is the man's friend.

ORAL EXERCISE

31. *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary:*

1. Estne vir lēgātus? 2. Amīcīne sumus? 3. Laudāsne equum amīcī? 4. Lēgātīne estis? 5. Esne amīcus virī?

¹ Why plural? Compare § 701, a.

LESSON V

SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER. ADJECTIVES

Multum in parvo. — Much in little.

32. Nouns of the **second declension** which end in **-um** in the nominative singular are *neuter*.

33. Neuter nouns of all declensions have the *nominative and accusative cases alike*, and in the plural these cases always end in **-a**.

34. **Bel'lum, n., war.** BASE, **bell-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	bel'lum	um	bel'la	a
<i>Gen.</i>	bel'lī	ī	bellō'rum	ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bel'lō	ō	bel'līs	īs
<i>Acc.</i>	bel'lum	um	bel'la	a
<i>Abl.</i>	bel'lō	ō	bel'līs	īs

35. Latin Adjectives.—Latin adjectives are declined like nouns and, in order to agree with their nouns in gender, they have a masculine, a feminine, and a neuter form.

36. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have their feminine forms like nouns of the first declension, and their masculine and neuter forms like masculine and neuter nouns of the second declension.

37. **Mag'nus**,¹ *great, large.* BASE, **magn-**

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	mag'nus	mag'na	mag'num
<i>Gen.</i>	mag'nī	mag'nae	mag'nī
<i>Dat.</i>	mag'nō	mag'nae	mag'nō
<i>Acc.</i>	mag'num	mag'nam	mag'num
<i>Abl.</i>	mag'nō	mag'nā	mag'nō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	mag'nī	mag'nae	mag'na
<i>Gen.</i>	magnō'rum	magnā'rum	magnō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	mag'nīs	mag'nīs	mag'nīs
<i>Acc.</i>	mag'nōs	mag'nās	mag'na
<i>Abl.</i>	mag'nīs	mag'nīs	mag'nīs

What is the vocative singular of **magnus**? See §§ 6, *a*, and 23, *a*.

38. VOCABULARY

al'bus, al'ba, al'bum, <i>white.</i>	mul'tus, mul'ta, mul'tum, <i>much;</i> <i>plural, many.</i>
bo'nus, bo'na, bo'num, <i>good,</i> <i>kind.</i>	bel'lum, -ī, n., <i>war.</i>
lon'gus, lon'ga, lon'gum, <i>long,</i> <i>tall.</i>	dō'num, -ī, n., <i>gift, present.</i>
mag'nus, mag'na, mag'num, <i>great, large.</i>	frūmen'tum, -ī, n., <i>grain.</i>
par'vus, par'va, par'vum, <i>small,</i> <i>little.</i>	op'pidum, -ī, n., <i>town.</i>
	ro'sa, -ae, f., <i>rose.</i>
	vi'a, vi'ae, f., <i>way, road.</i>
	vo'cō, <i>I call.</i>

39. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

magnify multiply donate vocation

¹ No other forms are used so constantly and in so many different ways as those in this section. They should be learned so that they "say themselves."

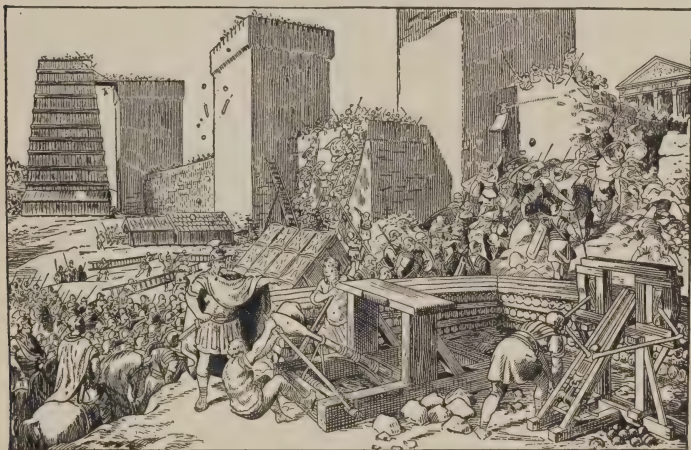
RULE

40. Agreement of Adjectives with Nouns. — An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.¹

The boy is small. **Puer parvus est.**

The farmers are good. **Agricolae bonī sunt.**

Notice that the adjective does not always end like the noun. **Agricolae**, although of the first declension, is masculine from its meaning, so **bonī** is masculine, nominative, plural, to agree with it.



Storming a Town.

EXERCISES

41. *Translate, giving the reason for the ending of each adjective:*

- (a) 1. Tuba magna est. 2. Multa bella longa sunt.
 3. Multum frūmentum portāmus. 4. Memoria puerī bona est.
 5. Puer parvus fābulās multās nārrat.

¹ This is true whether the adjective is in the predicate or directly attached to the noun.

(b) 1. Vir bonās litterās puerī parvī laudat. 2. Nūntius puerōs bonōs vocat. 3. Puellae rosās albās amant. 4. Vir agrōs agricolārum laudat. 5. Multa oppida magna sunt.



Via Appia.

42. Review carefully §§ 15, 16, 17, 27, 28, and 40, and translate, marking all long vowels:

(a) 1. The gifts are large. 2. The men seize the town. 3. The man's trumpet is large. 4. The good farmers are preparing (their) fields. 5. You are a good friend.

(b) 1. The towns are large. 2. The messenger's horse is small. 3. Gaul is large. 4. The small boy is (my) friend. 5. The roses are white. 6. The lieutenant loves (his) country.

ORAL EXERCISE

43. Answer these questions in Latin:

1. Equusne puerī magnus est? 2. Bellane longa sunt?

3. Bonīne virī pugnant? 4. Estne ager agricolae parvus?
 5. Lēgātīne multa oppida occupant?

VIA APPIA¹

44. Pictūra est pulchra. Pictūra Viae Appiae est. Via Appia antīqua via est. Via Appia est longa et alba. Aqueductus aquam nōn portat. Aqueductus ruīna est.



The Appian Way farther from Rome.

The paving blocks in the foreground were laid by the Romans twenty-two centuries ago and are still in good condition.

Arborēs sunt in agrō. Sunt frūmenta² in agrīs. Vir frūmentum in (to) oppidum portat. Via Appia pulchra est.

¹ For new words refer to the general vocabulary at the back of the book.

² Used in the plural to indicate standing grain.

LESSON VI

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS. INDIRECT OBJECT

*Da dextram misero. — Lend a hand.**

45. The **Principal Parts** of a Latin verb are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, *Perfect Indicative*, and *Perfect Participle*. These are called principal parts because when they are known all forms of the verb may readily be found.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
por'tō	portā're	portā'vī	portā'tus

(a) Form the principal parts of *amō*, *laudō*, *occupō*, *parō*, *portō*, *nārrō*.

46. **Verb Stems.** — The fixed parts of a verb, to which the different endings are added, are called **stems**. Every regular verb has three stems: *present*, *perfect*, and *participial*, corresponding to its principal parts.

47. To find the *present stem* of a verb drop **re** from the present infinitive active: *portāre*; stem, *portā-*.

48. Verbs are said to be of the *first conjugation* when the present infinitive ends in *-āre*. The stem ends in *ā-*.

49. Each form of the **present indicative** is composed of the *present stem* plus the proper *personal ending*.

Present Indicative

por'tō, <i>I carry.</i>	portā'mus, <i>we carry.</i>
por'tās, <i>you carry.</i>	portā'tis, <i>you carry.</i>
por'tat, <i>he carries.</i>	por'tant, <i>they carry.</i>

(a) Notice that *ā* of the stem is dropped before *-ō* in the first person singular and that *ā* becomes short before *-t* and *-nt*.

* Virgil. Literally: *Give the right hand to the unfortunate.*

50. The **imperfect**¹ **indicative** is formed by the *present stem* plus the *tense sign -ba-* plus the *personal endings*.

Imperfect Indicative

portā'bam, <i>I was carrying.</i>	portābā'mus, <i>we were carrying.</i>
portā'bās, <i>you were carrying.</i>	portābā'tis, <i>you were carrying.</i>
portā'bat, <i>he was carrying.</i>	portā'bant, <i>they were carrying.</i>

(a) The personal ending **-m** is always used for the first person singular of the imperfect tense in the active voice.

51. The **future indicative** is formed by the *present stem* plus the *tense sign -bi-* plus the *personal endings*. The **i** of the tense sign is dropped before the personal ending **-ō** in the first person singular, and appears as **u** before the ending **-nt** in the third person plural.

Future Indicative

portā'bō, <i>I shall carry.</i>	portā'bimus, <i>we shall carry.</i>
portā'bis, <i>you will carry.</i>	portā'bitis, <i>you will carry.</i>
portā'bit, <i>he will carry.</i>	portā'bunt, <i>they will carry.</i>

52.

VOCABULARY

dīlīgen'tia, -ae, f., <i>diligence, care.</i>	sum, esse, fu'ī, <i>I am.</i>
fos'sa, -ae, f., <i>ditch.</i>	cē'lō, cēlā're, cēlā'vī, cēlā'tus, , <i>I conceal.</i>
Gal'lī, -ō'rum, m., <i>Gauls.</i>	dō, da're, de'dī, da'tus, ² <i>I give.</i>
mū'rus, -ī, m., <i>wall.</i>	vul'nerō, vulnerā're, vulne- rā'vī, vulnerā'tus, <i>I wound.</i>
ser'va, -ae, f., <i>female servant,</i> <i>slave.</i>	in, prep. with abl., <i>in, on.</i>
ser'vus, -ī, m., <i>male servant, slave.</i>	sed, conjunction, <i>but.</i>
sig'num, -ī, n., <i>signal, standard.</i>	
altus, -a, -um, <i>high, deep, tall.</i>	

(a) Compare **Gallia** and **Gallī**; **serva** and **servus**.

¹ The imperfect indicative represents an act as going on in past time or as repeated in past time.

² This verb has short *a* in the present stem, except in the forms **dās**, the imperative **dā**, and the participle **dāns**.

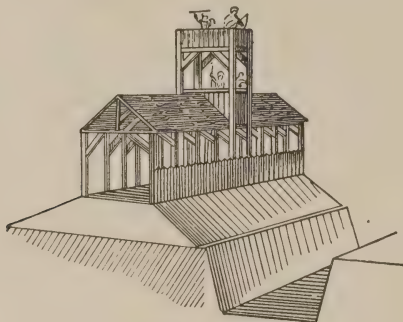
53. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

mural
servant

vulnerable
altitude

sign
diligent

dative
viaduct



Wall and Ditch.

DRILL ON VERB FORMS

54. *Analyze¹ each form and translate:*

(a) 1. *Vulnerābam, vocābis, amātis.* 2. *Parat, portāmus, occupābunt.* 3. *Damus, laudābat, vocābunt.* 4. *Pugnābis, nārrābant, amāmus.* 5. *Vulnerābit, occupābimus, dabunt.*

(b) 1. *Parābās, laudābātis, cēlābimus.* 2. *Occupant, vulnerābit, dabit.* 3. *Portō, laudābit, amābunt.* 4. *Vulnerābāmus, vulnerābitis, dās.* 5. *Nārrābam, cēlābō, vulnerātis.*

55. *Translate:*

(a) 1. We are calling, he will call, I am calling. 2. They will fight, I was fighting, we shall fight. 3. They are, they are concealing, they were concealing. 4. You were praising,

¹ To analyze a verb form divide it into *stem*, *tense sign*, and *personal ending*. Notice that the verb is translated from right to left.

portā ba m } *I was carrying.*
carrying was I

I shows the person and number, *was* the tense, and *carrying* the meaning of the simple verb.

we shall praise, they praise. 5. I shall give, you (*plur.*) are giving, they will give.

(*b*) 1. You (*sing.*) were telling, we shall tell, he tells. 2. We are, we are carrying, they will carry. 3. We shall prepare, you are preparing, we were preparing. 4. I am, I call, I shall call. 5. We were seizing, they seize, he gives.

RULE

56. Indirect Object. — The indirect object is expressed by the dative case.¹

The farmer gives a horse to the boy. Agricola puerō equum dat.

The lieutenant is giving the messenger a signal. Lēgātus nūntiō signum dat.

EXERCISES

57. Translate:

(*a*) 1. Vir servō signa dabit. 2. Lēgātō fābulās nārrātis. 3. Agricolae bonī equīs frūmentum dabunt. 4. Virī amīcīs dōna dabant. 5. Virīs fābulam longam nārrābō.

(*b*) 1. Diligentia puerī est magna. 2. Sumus bonī servī. 3. Mūrus oppidī est altus. 4. Agricolae in silvīs equōs cēlābant. 5. Gallī in Galliā pugnābant.

Note. — The indirect object is generally placed before the direct object.

58. Translate:

(*a*) 1. The friends of the Gauls are many. 2. The wall is high, but the ditch is small. 3. The wars in Gaul are long. 4. The boy will give a present to (his) friend. 5. The girls were telling stories to the boys.

(*b*) 1. We shall seize the towns in the province. 2. The man will praise the diligence of the boys and girls. 3. We were wounding the Gauls. 4. The walls of many towns are high. 5. The slaves conceal the standards.

¹ Compare § 714, *a*.

ORAL EXERCISE

59. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Dabisne bonō puerō dōnum ? 2. Servusne equōs cēlābit ?
3. Puerīne in agrō magnō sunt ? 4. Nūntiusne Gallīs signum
dabat ? 5. Gallīne in multis bellīs pugnābant ?



Roman Standards and Standard Bearers.

LESSON VII

ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF MEANS

*Alis volat propriis. — She flies with her own wings.**

60. Miser, wretched. BASE, miser-

	MASCULINE	SINGULAR	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	mi'ser		mi'sera	mi'serum
Gen.	mi'serī		mi'serae	mi'serī
Dat.	mi'serō		mi'serae	mi'serō
Acc.	mi'serum		mi'seram	mi'serum
Abl.	mi'serō		mi'serā	mi'serō
		PLURAL		
Nom.	mi'serī		mi'serae	mi'sera
Gen.	miserō'rum		miserā'rum	miserō'rum
Dat.	mi'serīs		mi'serīs	mi'serīs
Acc.	mi'serōs		mi'serās	mi'sera
Abl.	mi'serīs		mi'serīs	mi'serīs

61. Pulcher, beautiful. BASE, pulchr-

	SINGULAR		
Nom.	pul'cher	pul'chra	pul'chrum
Gen.	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chrī
Dat.	pul'chrō	pul'chrae	pul'chrō
Acc.	pul'chrum	pul'chram	pul'chrum
Abl.	pul'chrō	pul'chrā	pul'chrō
		PLURAL	
Nom.	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chra
Gen.	pulchrō'rum	pulchrā'rum	pulchrō'rum
Dat.	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs
Acc.	pul'chrōs	pul'chrās	pul'chra
Abl.	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs

* The motto of Oregon. Used for to stand on one's own feet.

62. Conjugation of **sum**, *I am*. An irregular verb.

Imperfect

e'ram, *I was*.e'rās, *you were*.e'rat, *he was*.erā'mus, *we were*.erā'tis, *you were*.e'rant, *they were*.

Future

e rō, *I shall be*.e'ris, *you will be*.e'rit, *he will be*.e'rimus, *we shall be*.e'ritis, *you will be*.e'runt, *they will be*.

63.

VOCABULARY

do'mina, -ae, f., *mistress, lady*.do'minus, -ī, m., *master, lord*.gla'dius, gla'dī, m., *sword*.li'ber, li'brī, m., *book*.magis'ter, -trī, m., *teacher*.Mār'cus, -ī, m., *Marcus*.nu'merus, -ī, m., *number*.pī'lum, -ī, n., *javelin*.cā'rus, -a, -um, *dear*.fī'dus, -a, -um, *faithful*.lī'ber, -era, -erum, *free*.ma'lus, -a, -um, *bad*.mi'ser, -a, -um, *wretched, unhappy*.ni'ger, -gra, -grum, *black*.pul'cher, -chra, -chrom, *beautiful*.nōn, *adverb, not*.nōn'ne, *interrogative particle expecting the answer yes*.num, *interrogative particle expecting the answer no*.(a) Compare **domina** and **dominus**; **liber** and **liber**.64. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

gladiator

library

liberty

miserable

dominant

numerous

magistrate

fidelity

RULE

65. **Ablative of Means or Instrument.** — Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*They fight with javelins.* **Pīlis pugnāt.***The servant wounds the master with a sword.* **Servus gladiō domi num vulnerat.**

EXERCISES

66. *Translate, naming the case of each noun and giving the reason for the use of that case:*

- (a) 1. Mārcus gladiō longō pugnābit. 2. Gallī tubā lēgātō signum dabunt. 3. Gladiō Mārcum vulnerābimus. 4. Līberī virī erāmus. 5. Servī pīlis et gladiis pugnābant.



Roman Sword and Javelin.

- (b) 1. Malus dominus eris. 2. Equus niger virī in silvā est. 3. Librī magistrī erant pulchrī. 4. Servī miserī dominōs malōs nōn amant. 5. Servae fīdae dominam cāram amābant.

67. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

- (a) 1. I shall be a faithful teacher. 2. Many Gauls are free. 3. The black slaves were wretched. 4. The bad master fights with a javelin. 5. With the trumpet we shall give the signals to the men.

- (b) 1. I shall conceal the black horse in the forest. 2. The books were beautiful. 3. The faithful messenger was giving the signal to the lieutenant. 4. You (*plur.*) will tell the story to (your) friends. 5. (There) was a large number of boys and girls in the town.

68. **Interrogative Particles.** — When a negative answer is expected, the question is introduced by **num**; when an affirmative answer is expected, the question is introduced by **nōnne**.¹

¹ In Latin **nōn** in **nōnne**, just as **not** in English, is used to show that an affirmative answer is expected. *Are not the slaves faithful? Nōnne servī fīdī sunt?*

ORAL EXERCISES

69. *Answer these questions in Latin.*

1. Nōnne lēgātī pīlīs pugnānt? 2. Num servī miserī erant? 3. Estne numerus Gallōrum in oppidō magnus? 4. Eratne pīlum virī longum? 5. Nōnne virī gladiīs pugnābunt?



The Colosseum seen through the Arch of Titus.

Compare this with the pictures on pages 82 and 206.

LESSON VIII

PERFECT TENSES.¹ EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

*E pluribus unum. — Out of many, one.**

70. To find the **perfect stem**, drop **ī** from the perfect indicative active — **portāvī**; stem, **portāv-**.

The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses indicative active are formed from the perfect stem.

71. The perfect tense, indicative in the active voice, has **characteristic personal endings**.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First Person	-ī	-imus
Second Person	-istī	-istis
Third Person	-it	-ērunt (-ēre)

72. Perfect tense = *perfect stem + the characteristic personal endings*.

Pluperfect tense = *perfect stem + tense sign era + regular personal endings*.

Future perfect tense = *perfect stem + tense sign eri + regular personal endings*.

Perfect Indicative Active

73. *I have carried, I carried, I did carry*²

(a) portā'vī	portā'vimus
portāvis'tī	portāvis'tis
portā'vit	portāvē'runt (-ē're)

* The motto of the United States.

¹ Compare §§ 695-700.

² The perfect indicative represents an act as completed at the time of speaking (*has carried*), or merely as having occurred in past time (*carried*).

Pluperfect Indicative Active*I had carried*

(b) portā' veram	portāverā' mus
portā' verās	portāverā' tis
portā' verat	portā' verant

Future Perfect Indicative Active*I shall have carried*

(c) portā' verō	portāve' rimus
portā' veris	portāve' ritis
portā' verit	portā' verint

(d) Following the same laws, conjugate **sum** through the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative tenses, § 591.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS**74. Analyze each form:**

(a) 1. Pugnāverat, pugnābunt, pugnāvistī. 2. Parābat, parat, parāverint. 3. Occupāvī, occupābam, occupāverit. 4. Dedimus, dant, dederās. 5. Cēlābit, cēlāvistī, cēlāverunt.

(b) 1. Vocābāmus, vocāveritis, vocāvistis. 2. Laudāverat, laudāmus, laudāverō. 3. Erāmus, fuerint, fuērunt. 4. Fuistī, fuerās, fuerit. 5. Parābant, dedēre, vocābō.

75. Translate:

(a) 1. I have called, you were calling, you will call. 2. We shall have given, he gave, they had given. 3. You had wounded, they will have wounded, we are wounding. 4. They have seized, we shall seize, he seizes. 5. They will have prepared, I shall prepare, we prepare.

(b) 1. You have told, I had told, they told. 2. They have been, he was, you will have been. 3. They had been, we shall be, I have been. 4. You have been, he had been, we shall have been. 5. You are, we had been, I am.

RULE

76. Place. — In general, place is expressed as follows :

Place *in* or *on* which — **in** with the *ablative* case.

Place *from* which — **ā** or **ab** with the *ablative* case.

Place *out of* which — **ē** or **ex** with the *ablative* case.

Place *into* which — **in** with the *accusative* case.

Place *to* which — **ad** with the *accusative* case.

Note. — **Ab** and **ex** must be used before a vowel or *h* ; before consonants **ab** or **ā**, **ex** or **ē** may be used.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS

77. Translate :

1. Ad mūrum. 2. In fossīs. 3. In bellum. 4. Ex oppidō.
5. In agrīs. 6. Ab nūntiō. 7. In memoriā.
8. Ad silvās. 9. In Galliā. 10. Ex prōvinciā.

78. Translate, marking all long vowels :

1. To the field. 2. In the towns. 3. To Gaul. 4. From the town.
5. On land. 6. From the fields. 7. Into the ditch.
8. Out of the woods. 9. From the walls. 10. Into Gaul.

79.

VOCABULARY

cas'tra, -ō'rum, n., *camp*.

cō'pia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty* ; plural, *forces*.

fī'lia, -ae, f., *daughter* (-ābus in dat. and abl. plur.).

fī'lius, fī'lī, m., *son*.

con'vocō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *call together, call*.

hi'emō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *pass the winter, winter*.

ser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *save, guard*.

su'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *surpass, conquer, defeat, overcome*.

ā or ab, prep. with abl., *from*.

ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward*.

in, prep. with abl., *in, on* ; with acc., *into, against*.

ē or ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from*.

80. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

filial copious convoke conserve insuperable



A Roman Candelabrum.

EXERCISES

81. Translate and give the construction of each noun:

(a) 1. Fuerant castra in Galliā. 2. Dominus servās ā prōvinciīs convocāverit. 3. In castrīs virōs servāverās. 4. Gallī ex oppidō in castra cōpiam frūmentī portāverant. 5. Vir filiīs et filiābus cōpiam librōrum dedit.

(b) 1. Cōpiās Gallōrum gladiīs superāverint. 2. In Galliā hiemāvimus. 3. In mūrō gladiōs et pīla cēlāvistis. 4. Fīlia agricolae ad magistrum librōs multōs et magnōs portāvit. 5. Servus dominō cārō numerum magnum pilōrum et gladiōrum dederat.

82. Translate, marking all long vowels:

(a) 1. The free men passed the winter in Gaul. 2. The faithful messenger calls the boys out of the field into the forest. 3. The Gauls gave beautiful presents to (their) sons and daughters. 4. The forces will have carried grain from the small town to the camp. 5. The black slave was concealing the grain in the forest.

(b) 1. Marcus had not been a friend of the Gauls. 2. The good farmer's sons and daughters had concealed (their) books. 3. The signal of the messenger saved the men. 4. You had wounded (your) friends with javelins. 5. You will give a book to (your) daughter, but a sword to (your) son.

ORAL EXERCISE

83. Answer these questions in Latin:

1. Puerīne¹ ex agrō equum vocāvērunt? 2. Nōnne in Galliā hiemābātis? 3. Portāverāsne frūmentum ad castra? 4. Nōnne servus est miser? 5. Num filia puella mala fuit?

¹ Pronounce and think of the words in groups: Puerīne ex agrō equum vocāvērunt?

LESSON IX

REVIEW

*Festina lente. — Make haste slowly.**

84. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can, that seem to be derived from the following :

aqua	portō	pugnō	terra
magnus	longus	multus	dōnum
vocō	liber	signum	dominus
fīdus	malus	numerus	filius

85. Word Drill. — Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin words for the following :

mistress	javelin	Gaul	lieutenant
master	sword	signal	native land
book	war	gift	friend
farmer	number	letter	man
son	rose	grain	story
daughter	diligence	horse	messenger
forest	ditch	town	language
teacher	trumpet	field	boy

86. Form Drill. — 1. Decline *agricola*, *lēgātus*, *signum*, *bonus*, *liber*. 2. Name the principal parts of a verb. 3. Name the six tenses in order. 4. Give the formula for making each. 5. Conjugate *sum* through the indicative. 6. Give the principal parts of *ad* and conjugate it through the indicative.

* A saying of Emperor Augustus, as quoted by the Latin author Suetonius.



A Roman Street Scene.

87. Questions. — 1. What cases are alike in the neuter gender? What is the ending of these cases in the plural? 2. What case denotes possession? the indirect object? the direct object? means or instrument? 3. What case and what preposition are used to express place *in* which, *into* which, *to* which, *from* which, *out of* which? 4. How is the present stem of a verb found? the perfect stem? 5. What tenses are formed from the present stem? from the perfect stem? 6. In what three ways may the present tense **dat** be translated?

88. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Es amīcus nūntiōrum. 2. Puellae dōnum dabis. 3. Virī dīligentiam servārum laudābunt. 4. Mūrī oppidī altī erunt et fossa longa erit. 5. Equus albus est in agrō agricolae. 6. Dīligentia servae fīdae magna erat. 7. Erimus bonī amīcī magistrī. 8. Numerus servōrum in Galliā magnus erat. 9. Vir malus in silvā equum dominī cēlābat. 10. Lēgātī ā mūrō cōpiās vocāvērunt.

CAROLUS ET PŌMA¹

89. Carolus agricolae fīlius erat et bonus puer sed malōs amīcōs habēbat. Agricola filiō calathum pōmōrum magnōrum plēnum dedit. In calathō erant multa et bona pōma sed pauca vitiāta.

Puer pōma cēlāvit sed vitiāta pōma maculāvērunt bona, et mox nūlla bona erant. Tum agricola filium monuit: "Pauca vitiāta pōma maculant multa bona. Sic malī amīcī bonōs puerōs vitiābunt."

¹ Refer to the general vocabulary for new words.

LESSON X

THIRD DECLENSION

Ad astra per aspera. — “*To the stars through bolts and bars.*” *

90. The third declension consists of all words whose genitive singular ends in **-is**. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

91. Many nouns of the third declension have their nominative just like the base, except in the quantity of the last vowel. Note that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

Cōnsul, m., *consul*
 BASE, **cōnsul-**

Soror, f., *sister*
 BASE, **sorōr-**

SINGULAR		TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i> cōn'sul	<i>Nom.</i> sor'ror	—
<i>Gen.</i> cōn'sulis	<i>Gen.</i> sorō'ris	is
<i>Dat.</i> cōn'sulī	<i>Dat.</i> sorō'rī	ī
<i>Acc.</i> cōn'sule m	<i>Acc.</i> sorō're m	em
<i>Abl.</i> cōn'sule	<i>Abl.</i> sorō're	e
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i> cōn'sulēs	<i>Nom.</i> sorō'rēs	ēs
<i>Gen.</i> cōn'sulum	<i>Gen.</i> sorō'rum	um
<i>Dat.</i> cōnsu'libus	<i>Dat.</i> sorō'ribus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> cōn'sulēs	<i>Acc.</i> sorō'rēs	ēs
<i>Abl.</i> cōnsu'libus	<i>Abl.</i> sorō'ribus	ibus

* The motto of Kansas and an appropriate one for school classes.
 Literally: *To the stars through difficulties.*

Note. — Compare the following case endings :

Declension	I	II	III
Accusative singular :	-am	-um	-em
Genitive plural :	-ārum	-ōrum	-um
Accusative plural :	-ās	-ōs	-ēs

92.

VOCABULARY

ar'bor, -oris, f., <i>tree.</i>	lī'berō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>set free.</i>
cōn'sul, -ulis, m., <i>consul.</i>	mōns'trō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>show.</i>
explōrā'tor, -ō'ris, m., <i>scout.</i>	nūn'tiō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>announce.</i>
fē'mina, -ae, f., <i>woman.</i>	vās'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>lay waste.</i>
imperā'tor, -ō'ris, m., <i>commander-in-chief, general.</i>	lā'tus, -a, -um, <i>broad, wide.</i>
mercā'tor, -ō'ris, m., <i>merchant.</i>	ubi, <i>interrogative adverb, where; relative adverb, where, when.</i>
so'ror, -ō'ris, f., <i>sister.</i>	quis, <i>interrogative pronoun, who?</i>
ti'mor, -ō'ris, m., <i>fear, dread.</i>	
vic'tor, -ō'ris, m., <i>victor.</i>	
victō'ria, -ae, f., <i>victory.</i>	
aedi'ficō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>build.</i>	

93. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

arbor	feminine	explorer	timorous
sorority	edifice	demonstrate	devastate

RULE

94. **Parsing.** — To parse a noun give (1) declension, (2) nominative and genitive singular, (3) gender, (4) number, (5) case, (6) rule.

In 95, 1, **mūrum** would be parsed as follows : **mūrum** : *second declension, mūrus, mūrī* ; *masculine gender; singular number; accusative case, direct object of the verb aedificābunt.*

EXERCISES

95. *Translate, parsing the nouns :*

(a) 1. Victōrēs mūrum altum aedificābunt. 2. Timor explōrātōris magnus est. 3. Amīcī mercātōrum agrōs multōs

et lātōs vāstābant. 4. Magister sorōrī parvae pulchrum librum mōnstrāvit. 5. Imperātor tubā cōsulī victōriam magnam nūntiat.

(b) 1. Es filia cāra. 2. Ad fēminam bonam dōna pulchra portāverāmus. 3. Dominus bonus servōs fidēs liberāverat. 4. Fuērunt in silvā multae et magnae arborēs. 5. Explōrātōrēs ex oppidō in castra lēgātōs convocāvērunt.



Imperator.

96. Translate, marking long vowels:

(a) 1. The merchant's fear was great. 2. The scout's sister had been in the victor's field. 3. The faithful consul has set free many slaves in (his) native land. 4. The woman will praise (her) son's victory. 5. The lieutenants have not conquered the Gauls.

(b) 1. The victors gave many large gifts to (their) sons, but will not give the boys swords. 2. You are a good man, but you are not free. 3. The commander-in-chief will announce the victory to the faithful consul. 4. The man called (his) sons and daughters out of the forest into the town. 5. We had shown the beautiful trees to (our) friends.

97. Questions. — Questions which cannot be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb. In such questions **ne** is not used.

ORAL EXERCISE

98. Answer these questions in Latin:

1. Ubi soror puerī erat? 2. Quis es? 3. Nōne magna victōria fuit? 4. Esne amīcus imperātōris? 5. Aedificavitne altum mūrū?

LESSON XI

THIRD DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

Cum grano salis.—*With a grain of salt.**

99. In many nouns of the third declension the nominative differs very little from the base.

Mī'les, m., *soldier*
BASE, mī'lit-

Iū'dex, m., *judge*
BASE, iū'dic-

Frā'ter, m., *brother*
BASE, frā'tr-

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i> mī'les	iū'dex	frā'ter
<i>Gen.</i> mī'litis	iū'dicis	frā'tris
<i>Dat.</i> mī'litī	iū'dicī	frā'trī
<i>Acc.</i> mī'litem	iū'dicem	frā'trem
<i>Abl.</i> mī'lite	iū'dice	frā'tre

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> mī'litēs	iū'dicēs	frā'trēs
<i>Gen.</i> mī'litum	iū'dicum	frā'trum
<i>Dat.</i> mī'litibus	iū'dicibus	frā'tribus
<i>Acc.</i> mī'litēs	iū'dicēs	frā'trēs
<i>Abl.</i> mī'litibus	iū'dicibus	frā'tribus

100.

VOCABULARY

Cae'sar, -aris, m., *Caesar*.

dux, du'cis, m., *leader*.

frā'ter, -tris, m., *brother*.

iū'dex, -icis, m., *judge*.

la'pis, -idis, m., *stone*.

de'cimus, -a, -um, *tenth*.

le'giō, -ō'nis, f., *legion*.

lī'berī, -ō'rum, m., *children*.

mā'ter, -tris, f., *mother*.

mī'les, -itis, m., *soldier*.

pa'ter, -tris, m., *father*.

tē'lum, -ī, n., *weapon*.

oppug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *attack, storm*.

cir'cum, preposition with accusative, *around*.

cum, preposition with ablative, *with*.

* This expression is used to imply an exaggeration.

(a) Note carefully :

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,	to set free.	{ Compare the
liber, -era, -erum,	free.	
liberī, -ōrum,	freeborn children.	
liber, librī,	book.	
		English
		liberate, liberty.
		library.

101. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fraternity decimal judicial paternal

RULE

102. **Ablative of Accompaniment.** — Accompaniment (in company with or in conflict with) is expressed by the ablative with **cum**.

The boy is with his father. **Puer cum patre est.**

Caesar fought with the Gauls. **Caesar cum Gallīs pugnāvit.**

EXERCISES

103. *Translate, and give construction of each noun :*

- (a) 1. Dux cum frātre erat. 2. Liberī cum iūdice erunt.
 3. Gallī cum Caesare pugnābant. 4. Pater cum filiābus est.
 5. Caesar cum decimā legiōne oppidum Gallōrum oppugnāvit.
 (b) 1. Caesar tubā decimae legiōnī victōriam nūtiāvit.
 2. Malus vir lapide mīlitem vulnerāverit. 3. Lāta fossā circum mūrum fuerat. 4. Liberī iūdicis patrī tēla mōnstrābunt. 5. Ducēs cum multīs mīlitibus oppida magna oppugnāverant.

104. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. The leader fought with the tenth legion. 2. The men saved the town of (their) fathers. 3. They will storm the wall around the camp. 4. The girl was with (her) brother in the native land of the Gauls. 5. Caesar gives a signal to (his) faithful legions.

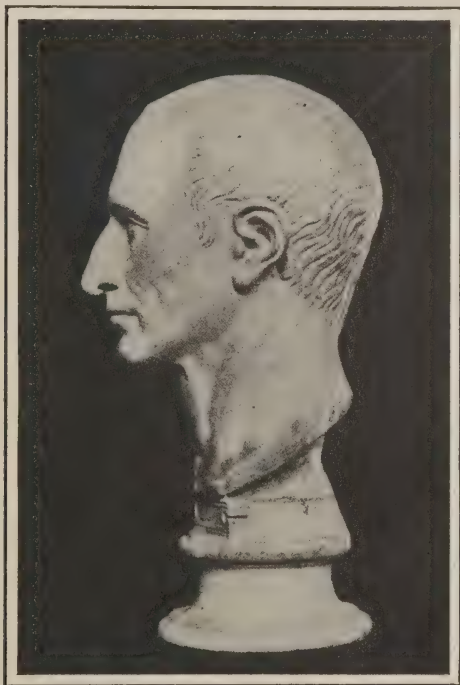
- (b) 1. The general and (his) children are good friends.

2. The judge's mother and sister were unhappy. 3. The messenger carried a letter from the merchant to the farmer. 4. The lieutenants have announced the victories of the soldiers. 5. The leader's forces passed the winter in camp and (there) was great fear.

ORAL EXERCISES

105. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis iūdex erit? 2. Pugnāvistīne tēlīs? 3. Quis cum Gallīs pugnābat? 4. Militēsne oppidum oppugnāvērunt? 5. Ubi erant bonī liberī?



Caesar.

LESSON XII

THIRD DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION

*Mens sana in corpore sano. — A sound mind in a sound body.**

106. The terminations of **neuters** of the third declension differ from masculines and feminines in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural.

Ca'put , n., <i>head</i>	Flūmen , n., <i>river</i>	Cor'pus , n., <i>body</i>
BASE, ca'pit-	BASE, flū'min-	BASE, cor'por-

SINGULAR			TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i> ca'put	flū'men	cor'pus	—
<i>Gen.</i> ca'pit is	flū'min is	cor'por is	is
<i>Dat.</i> ca'pit ī	flū'min ī	cor'por ī	ī
<i>Acc.</i> ca'put	flū'men	cor'pus	—
<i>Abl.</i> ca'pit e	flū'min e	cor'por e	e

PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i> ca'pit a	flū'min a	cor'por a	a
<i>Gen.</i> ca'pit um	flū min um	cor'por um	um
<i>Dat.</i> capi'tib us	flūmi'nib us	corpo'rib us	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> ca'pit a	flū'min a	cor'por a	a
<i>Abl.</i> capi'tib us	flūmi'nib us	corpo'rib us	ibus

107. The Four Conjugations. — There are four regular conjugations of verbs. They are distinguished by the vowel before **-re** in the present infinitive active. Their stems are all found in the same way as those of **portō**. See §§ 47 and 70.

* Juvenal.

	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Stem</i> <i>Vowel</i>
1st	por'tō	portā're	portā'vī	portā'tus	ā
2d	mo'neō	monē're	mo'nuī	mo'nitus	ē
3d	dū'cō	dū'cere	dū'xī	duc'tus	e
4th	au'diō	audī're	audī'vī	audī'tus	ī

108. The Second Conjugation.—The same rules as to stem, tense sign, and personal ending are followed for forming the various indicative tenses in the second conjugation as in the first. The *present stem* is **monē-**; the *perfect stem*, **monu-**.

In the first person singular of the present tense **e** of the stem is retained before the personal ending **-ō**, **monēō**.

109. Conjugation of **mo'neō**, *I advise, warn*.

Indicative Active

PRESENT		PERFECT	
<i>I advise, warn</i>		<i>I have advised, warned</i>	
mo'neō	monē'mus	mo'nuī	monu'imus
mo'nēs	monē'tis	monuis'tī	monuis'tis
mo'net ¹	mo'nent	mo'nuit	monuē'runt (-ē're)
IMPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I was advising, warning</i>		<i>I had advised, warned</i>	
monē'bam	monēbā'mus	monu'eram	monuerā'mus
monē'bās	monēbā'tis	monu'erās	monuerā'tis
monē'bat	monē'bant	monu'erat	monu'erant
FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
<i>I shall advise, warn</i>		<i>I shall have advised, warned</i>	
monē'bō	monē'bimus	monu'erō	monue'rimus
monē'bis	monē'bitis	monu'eris	monue'ritis
monē'bit	monē'bunt	monu'erit	monu'erint

¹ Note that the quantity of **e** corresponds to that of **a** in the first conjugation. See § 49, a.

110.

VOCABULARY

ca'put, ca'pitis, n., head.	ha'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, have,
clāmor, clāmō'ris, m., shout,	consider, hold.
noise.	mo'neō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, advise,
co'mes, co'mitis, m. and f.,	warn.
companion.	mo'veō, -ē're, mō'vī, mō'tus,
cor'pus, cor'poris, n., body.	move, break up (with castra).
flū'men, flū'minis, n., river.	te'neō, -ē're, -uī, —, hold.
ho'mō, ho'minis, m. and f., man,	ti'meō, -ē're, -uī, —, fear, be
human being.	afraid of.
pēs, pe'dis, m., foot.	vi'deō, -ē're, vī'dī, vī'sus, see.
rēx, rē'gis, m., king.	quid, interrog. pron., what?

111. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

capital	admonish	regal	homicide
pedestal	corporal	tenacious	timid

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

112. *Analyze each form:*

(a) 1. Habēbam, habuit, habēbunt, habuerātis. 2. Vidēmus,¹ vīdimus, videt, vīdit. 3. Timēbō, timuērunt, timuerint, timuit. 4. Movēbunt, mōvimus, movent, mōverātis. 5. Tenēbant, tenuistī, tenuit, tenerint.

(b) 1. Portat, laudāvī, timuī, nūtiāvī. 2. Parāvistis, vīdistis, dedistis, mōnstrābāmus. 3. Timēs, tenuerō, habēbat, vīderunt. 4. Vidēbant, vāstās, monet, mōvit. 5. Portāvit, monuit, dedit, fuit.

113. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(a) 1. We were moving, they had moved, he will move. 2. I shall warn, you had warned. 3. We have feared, they have seen, I shall have. 4. You have stormed, we were having. 5. They gave, they had been, they were seeing.

(b) 1. He warned, he gave, he saw. 2. He will have

¹ Compare vidēmus, vīdimus; videt, vīdit.

seen, he had held, you (*plur.*) are fearing. 3. You (*sing.*) were seeing, I had moved, you will have held. 4. They warn, we seized, he carries. 5. They had called, I am seeing, you moved.

RULE

114. Ablative of Manner. — Manner is expressed by the ablative with a limiting adjective or *cum*, or both.

He writes with great care. Magnā cum dīligentiā scrībit. Magnā dīligentiā scrībit.

He writes with care. Cum dīligentiā scrībit.

EXERCISES

115. Translate, and give principal parts of each verb:

(a) 1. Homō cum clāmōre comitem vocābat. 2. Milītēs cum dīligentiā oppidum servāvērunt. 3. Magistrī magnīs cum clāmōribus equōs vocāvērunt. 4. Caesar magnā cum dīligentiā decimam legiōnem in castrīs tenuerit. 5. Arborēs silvæ vidēmus.

(b) 1. Fīlius rēgis bonōs comitēs habēbit. 2. Hominēs decimam legiōnem timuerant. 3. Rēx magnum flūmen in silvā vīdit. 4. Hominēs castra mōverint. 5. Niger equus corpus magnum sed caput parvum habet.

116. Translate, marking long vowels:

(a) 1. The good teacher will advise the brother and sister.

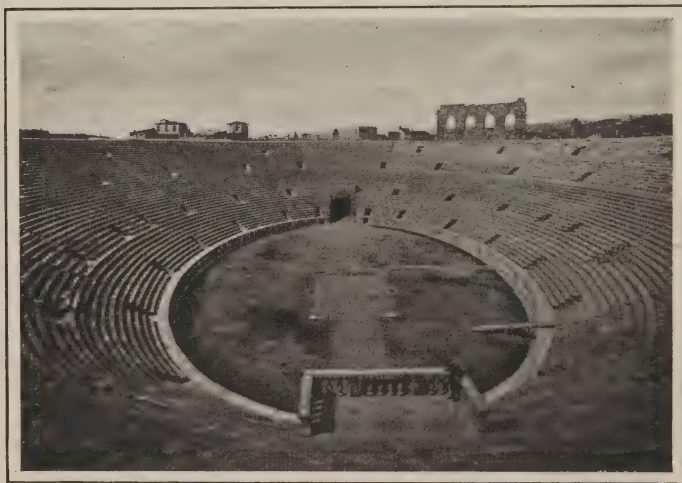
2. With many shouts the



Soldiers of the Legion.

soldiers seized the town. 3. The children feared the man's companion. 4. We fought with bad men, but were not victors. 5. The woman's fear was great.

(b) 1. The men wounded the horse's head with large stones. 2. Gaul had many large rivers. 3. The judge and the king had been in the small town. 4. The Gauls have walls around (their) towns. 5. With great fear the merchants had seen the soldiers.



The Roman Arena at Verona

Compare this with the Colosseum on page 206.

ORAL EXERCISE

117. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid vīdistī?
2. Suntne magnī lapidēs in flūmine?
3. Timēsne clāmōrem hominū?
4. Num ducēs castra mōvērunt?
5. Quis habet magnum caput?

LESSON XIII

THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

Ars longa, vita brevis. — “*Art is long and time is fleeting.*” *

118. Some third declension nouns have **i** before, or in place of, the vowel of certain endings. These are called **i-Stems**.

(a) In the first declension we noticed that **a** seemed the predominant vowel; in the second, **o**. So we speak of them as the **a-declension** and the **o-declension** and we say their *stems* end in **ā** and **o**. Similarly we speak of the third declension as the **consonant** or **i-declension**, because its stems end in a consonant or in **i**. In the consonant stems which we have been studying so far the *stem* is just like the *base*. We are now to study **i-stems**. Their *stem* is made by adding **i** to the *base*.

119. The following nouns regularly have **i-stems** :

1. Masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-ēs** and **-is**, not increasing¹ in the genitive; nouns ending in **-ns**, **-rs**, and monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** following a consonant.

These all end in **-ī** or **-e** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural.²

* Literally: *Art is long, life short.*

¹ The expression “not increasing in the genitive” is used to distinguish nouns like **hostis**, whose genitive has the same number of syllables as the nominative, from nouns like **miles**, **militis**, whose genitive has more syllables than the nominative.

² Originally the accusative singular ended in **-im**, the ablative singular in **-ī**, and the accusative plural in **-īs**; but these endings have been largely displaced by **-em**, **-e**, and **-ēs**.

2. Neuter nouns ending in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**.

These end in **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and in **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

120.

Ig'nis, m., *fire*.BASE, **ign-**
STEM, **igni-****Hos'tis**, m., *enemy*.BASE, **host-**
STEM, **hosti-****Ma're**, n., *sea*.BASE, **mar-**
STEM, **mari-**

	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS	
				M. and F.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	ig'nis	hos'tis	ma're	is	e
<i>Gen.</i>	ig'nis	hos'tis	ma'ris	is	is
<i>Dat.</i>	ig'nī	hos'tī	ma'rī	ī	ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ig'nem	hos'tem	ma're	em (im)	e
<i>Abl.</i>	ig'nī or e	hos'te	ma'rī	e (ī)	ī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ig'nēs	hos'tēs	ma'ria	ēs	ia
<i>Gen.</i>	ig'nium	hos'tium	ma'rium	ium	ium
<i>Dat.</i>	ig'nibus	hos'tibus	ma'ribus	ibus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ig'nīs, ēs	hos'tīs, ēs	ma'ria	īs, ēs	ia
<i>Abl.</i>	ig'nibus	hos'tibus	ma'ribus	ibus	ibus

121.

VOCABULARY

a'nimal , -ā'lis , (-ium ¹), n., <i>animal</i> .	mōns , mon'tis , (-ium), m., <i>mountain</i> .
cae'dēs , -is , (-ium), f., <i>slaughter</i> .	nox , noc'tis , (-ium), f., <i>night</i> .
hos'tis , hos'tis , m., <i>an enemy</i> — hos'tēs , hos'tium , <i>the enemy</i> .	pars , par'tis , (-ium), f., <i>part</i> .
ig'nis , -is , (-ium), m., <i>fire</i> .	por'ta , -ae , f., <i>gate</i> .
ma're , -is , (-ium ²), n., <i>sea</i> .	rī'pa , -ae , f., <i>bank (of a river)</i> .
	urbs , ur'bis , (-ium), f., <i>city</i> .
	sae'pe , <i>adverb, often</i> .

122. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

hostile	ignite	marine	nocturnal
partial	riparian	portal	urban

¹ Genitive Plural.² The genitive plural is not used.

EXERCISES

123. *Translate, and decline the nouns:*

(a) 1. Multa animālia fuērunt in marī. 2. In Galliā noctēs sunt longae. 3. Agrōs hostium ignī vāstābimus. 4. Caput pars corporis est. 5. Caesar cum hostibus saepe pugnāvit et caedēs fuit magna.

(b) 1. Rīpae flūminis altae erant. 2. Dux militēs in castrīs tenuit. 3. Agrōs ab urbe ad montem vāstāvit. 4. Militēs ā portīs urbis tēla portābunt. 5. Patrēs filiōs magnā cum diligentiā monuerant.



A Roman Gate.

124. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(a) 1. Caesar had been victor. 2. (There) have been many fires on the mountain. 3. The enemy will pass the winter in the city. 4. (There) was a great slaughter of the enemy on the bank of the river. 5. The general's brother and sister see the large rivers.

(b) 1. The stones in the river are often beautiful. 2. They broke camp and stormed the gates of the enemy's

town. 3. The lieutenants had seen the fires of the enemy's camp from the city. 4. The men announced (their) victory to Caesar with great shouts. 5. The little children had feared the large animals.



The so-called Temple of Vesta at Rome.

125. *State in Latin five facts.* One pupil may state a fact to another and he in turn tell it to the class in English.

LESSON XIV

REVIEW

Consensus facit legem. — General consent makes the law.

126. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can, that seem to be derived from the following :

arbor	lātus	victōria	fēmina
dux	frāter	pater	miles
decimus	caput	corpus	homō
pēs	moveō	teneō	videō
hostis	ignis	pars	urbs

127. Word Drill. — (a) Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin nouns for the following :

gate	victory	foot	mother
man	slaughter	head	river
body	tree	brother	father
mountain	soldier	sister	enemy
city	children	sea	legion
weapon	fire	night	king
judge	stone	bank	leader

(b) Give the principal parts of the Latin verbs for the following :

advise	lay waste	show	hold
set free	have	see	storm
build	announce	give	conquer
move	fear	seize	warn

128. Form Drill. — 1. Decline *iūdex*, *imperātor*, *flūmen*, *hostis*, *mare*. 2. Conjugate *videō* through the indicative active. 3. Give the genitive singular ending of nouns of the first, second, and third declensions; also the accusative singular, genitive plural, and accusative plural endings. 4. Make a statement in Latin containing an ablative of means and an ablative of accompaniment. 5. Make a statement in Latin containing an ablative of manner.

129. Questions. — 1. Of what gender are nouns of the first declension? of the second? of the third? 2. What are the nominative endings of masculine nouns of the second declension? of neuter nouns of the second declension? 3. How do *i*-stems differ from consonant stems in declension? 4. How are the conjugations of verbs distinguished? 5. How does the present stem of the first conjugation always end? the present stem of the second conjugation?

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

130. 1. Puella fēminae librum dedit. 2. Multa aqua in agrō fuit. 3. Tēla explorātōris multa et magna erant. 4. Iūdex filiābus librōs pulchrōs dedit sed filiīs pīla. 5. Multī ducēs magnam militum diligentiam laudant. 6. Virī malum cōnsulem nōn amāverant. 7. Comes rēgis urbēs et flūmina vidēbit. 8. Hominēs decimam legiōnem timuerant. 9. Serva ā dominā ad mātrem dōna pulchra portābat. 10. Multī mercātōrēs montēs et mare vidēbunt.

EQUUS MĀRCĪ

131. Mārcus puer sorōrem Iūliam habēbat. Pater liberōrum multōs equōs in agrō habēbat. Liberī equum nigrum amābant quem (*which*) pater Mārcō dederat.

Equus dominum parvum circum agrum et in silvam saepe portābat. Soror Mārci magnōs equōs timēbat sed Mārcus ad equum frūmentum portāvit et ei (*to him*) aquam dedit.

Mali pueri lapidibus animal pulchrum vulnerāverant et māter liberōrum magnā cum diligentia equum cēlābat.



A Roman Aqueduct in Southern France.

LESSON XV

PASSIVE VOICE. ABLATIVE OF AGENT

Tempora mutantur. — Times are changed.

132. The personal endings in the **passive voice**¹ are :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st	-r	-mur
2d	-ris (re)	-mini
3d	-tur	-ntur

133. The rules for forming the *present, imperfect, and future* indicative are the same as in the active voice, the passive personal endings taking the place of the active ones.

134. PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Present Indicative

por'tor, *I am carried.*

portā'mur, *we are carried.*

portā'ris (re), *you are carried.*

portā'mini, *you are carried.*

portā'tur, *he is carried.*

portan'tur, *they are carried.*

Imperfect Indicative

portā'bar, *I was carried.*

portābā'mur, *we were carried.*

portābā'ris (-re), *you were carried.*

portābā'mini, *you were carried.*

portābā'tur, *he was carried.*

portāban'tur, *they were carried.*

¹ Compare §§ 687 and 688.

Future Indicative

portā'bor, <i>I shall be carried.</i>	portā'bimur, <i>we shall be carried.</i>
portā'beris (-re), <i>you will be carried.</i>	portābi'minī, <i>you will be carried.</i>
portā'bitur, <i>he will be carried.</i>	portābun'tur, <i>they will be carried.</i>

(a) Note the change in the vowel of the tense sign in the first and second person singular and third person plural of the future passive.

(b) Compare carefully the English translation of the active and passive of each tense.

135. Perfect Tenses. — The perfect stem is not used in the passive voice. The participial stem is found by dropping **-us** from the perfect passive participle (the last one of the principal parts). The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses in the passive are made by combining the participial stem, plus the endings seen in **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**, to agree with the subject, with **sum** for the perfect, **eram** for the pluperfect, and **erō** for the future perfect.

THIRD SINGULAR

portātus est, *he has been carried.*
 portāta est, *she has been carried.*
 portātum est, *it has been carried.*

THIRD PLURAL

portātī sunt, *they — (mas.)*
 portātae sunt, *they — (fem.)*
 portāta sunt, *they — (neut.)*

(a) According to the rule in § 135 conjugate **portō** through the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses in the passive voice. Compare with § 586.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

136. Analyze each Latin form:

(a) 1. Laudābantur, laudātī sumus, laudāvī. 2. Portāberis, portātum erat, portor. 3. Pugnāvimus, pugnābunt, pugnāverāmus. 4. Occupāta sunt, occupāta est, occupātur. 5. Amābiminī, amātī erimus, amātae erant.

(b) 1. Vulnerātus es, vulnerābāminī, vulnerāberis. 2. Dantur, dabuntur, dedimus. 3. Data erunt, cēlāberis, amābuntur. 4. Vocābāmur, vocāvistis, vocātum erat. 5. Aedificāvit, nūntiābitur, liberāta est.

137. *Translate, marking long vowels :*

(a) 1. You will be wounded. 2. They had been concealed. 3. I shall be praised. 4. It will be announced. 5. They (*neut.*) have been seized.

(b) 1. It had been carried. 2. They were conquered. 3. They have passed the winter. 4. We have been called together. 5. It was saved.

138.

VOCABULARY

centu'riō, -ō'nis, m., *centurion*.

Iū'lia, -ae, f., *Julia*.

proe'lium, proe'li, n., *battle*.

stel'la, -ae, f., *star*.

vī'cus, -ī, m., *village*.

sem'per, adv., *always, ever*.

vir'tūs, -ū'tis, f., *virtue, valor, courage*.

dēfes'sus, -a, -um, *tired, weary*.

cul'pō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *blame, censure*.

nā'vigō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *sail*.

(a) Compare **vīcus**, **oppidum**, **urbs** ; **saepe** and **semper** ; **bellum** and **proelium**.

139. *What Latin words do the following suggest ?*

virtue culpable navigate constellation

RULE

140. Ablative of Agent. — The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

The good boy is praised by his father. **Puer bonus ā patre laudātur.**

The book was carried by the teacher. **Liber ā magistrō portābātur.**

EXERCISES

141. *Translate, and give the rule for each noun in the ablative case :*

(a) 1. Puer bonus ā mātře nōn saepe culpābitur. 2. Dominus in marī nāvigāvit. 3. Līberī ā Iūliā amantur. 4. Agrī ā milītibz vāstābuntur. 5. Vīcī parvī hostiū ā cōpiīs Caesaris occupātī sunt.

(b) 1. In Galliā proelia ā fidō centuriōne semper nūntiāta erant. 2. Militēs ā portīs tubā ā dēfessō lēgātō vocābuntur. 3. Corpus equī multīs lapidibus vulnerābātur. 4. Agrī Gal-liae ignī et gladiō vāstātī erunt. 5. Centuriōnēs urbēs magnās cum vir-tūte oppugnāverant.

142. Translate:

(a) 1. The number of stars is great. 2. The teacher has been blamed by the boy's friend. 3. The centurions sailed with the soldiers. 4. Julia and (her) companion will have been loved by many friends. 5. The signals had always been given by the leader with a trumpet.

(b) 1. The valor of the faithful soldiers will always be praised by the leaders. 2. The sons and daughters of the king are in the city with (their) dear friends. 3. The leader breaks camp and the tired soldiers are called into the village. 4. We see a part of the battle from the bank of the river. 5. The soldiers attacked the city with great valor.



Roman Centurion.

ORAL EXERCISES

143. Answer these questions in Latin:

1. Puerne ā mātrem culpābātur? 2. Quis fidō militī tēlum dedit? 3. Lēgātusne militēs vocābit? 4. Frūmentumne in oppidum portātum est? 5. Quis amicus puerōrum erit?

LESSON XVI

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

*Jacta alea est. — The die is cast.**

144. Adjectives having the same endings as nouns of the third declension are called **adjectives of the third declension**. Almost all adjectives of the third declension, except comparatives, follow the inflection of *i*-stems; that is, they have *-ī* in the ablative singular, *-ium* in the genitive plural, *-īs* or *-ēs* in the accusative plural, masculine and feminine, and *-ia* in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

(a) Adjectives of the third declension ending in *-er* have a different form for each gender in the nominative singular and are called adjectives of *three endings*: *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*. Learn the declension of *ācer*, § 570.

145.

VOCABULARY

ae'stās, *-tā'tis*, f., *summer*.

an'nus, *-ī*, m., *year*.

celer'itās, *-tā'tis*, f., *swiftness*.

cī'vis, *cī'vis*, (*-ium*), m. and f.,
citizen.

hō'ra, *-ae*, f., *hour*.

mēn'sa, *-ae*, f., *table*.

nau'ta, *-ae*, m., *sailor*.

nā'vis, *nā'vis*, (*-ium*), f., *ship*.

ā'cer, *ā'cris*, *ā'cre*, *sharp*, *keen*,
active.

ce'ler, *ce'leris*, *ce'lere*, *quick*,
swift.

ter'tius, *-a*, *-um*, *third*.

146. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

civic

nautical

navy

accelerate

* Said by Caesar when he crossed the Rubicon. Quoted by Suetonius.

RULE

147. Ablative of Time. — Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

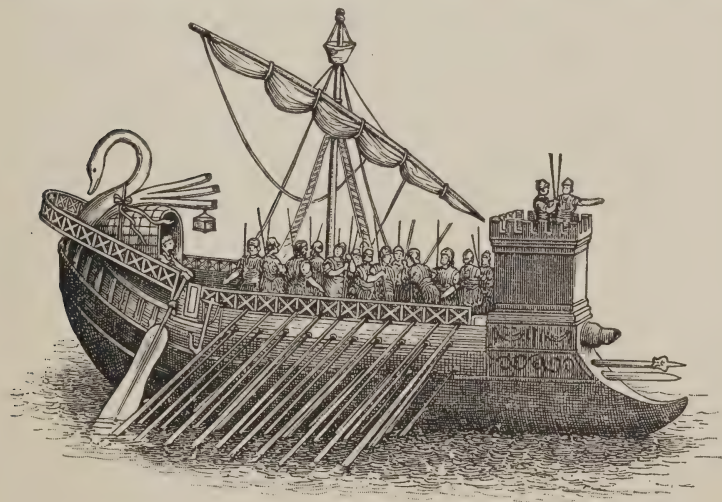
They were fighting at the tenth hour. Decimā hōrā pugnābant.

Many towns were stormed in one year. Multa oppida ūnō annō oppugnāta sunt.

EXERCISES

148. *Translate, and give the construction of each noun:*

(a) 1. Aestāte mīlitēs Caesaris saepe pugnābant. 2. Dux dēfessus nocte castra movet. 3. Tertiā hōrā frūmentum ex



A Roman Ship.

nāvibus in oppidum ab nautīs portātum erat. 4. Centuriō cum decimā legiōne annō tertiō oppidum magnā cum virtūte occupāvit. 5. Virtūs cīvium magna erat.

(b) 1. Nautae nāvibus nāvigant. 2. Hominēs magnā cum celeritāte in vīcum portāti sunt. 3. Nāvēs celerēs ad Iūliam

litterās portāverant. 4. Librī in mēnsā magnā sunt.
5. Gladii ā filiis iūdicis portātī erunt.

149. Translate:

(a) 1. The good king was loved by the faithful citizens.
2. In the third year of the war Caesar built many ships and he was not blamed by the citizens. 3. Good sailors see the stars, the sea, and ships. 4. The man's companion was a swift messenger. 5. At nine o'clock¹ the tired soldiers had been overcome by the swiftness of the enemy.

(b) 1. A high wall has been built around the village.
2. (There) are always many battles in a long war. 3. Weapons will be shown to the active soldier by the good leader.
4. The consul's native land had broad fields. 5. Many villages had been laid waste with fire and sword.

150. Composition. — State in Latin three facts about the table or the things upon it. When one pupil has stated a fact, another should translate it.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

151. Commit to memory with the translation:

1. Aestāte. 2. Tertiā hōrā. 3. Magnā cum celeritāte.
4. Cum decimā legiōne. 5. Memōriā tenēre.

¹ The third hour.

LESSON XVII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

*Fortes fortuna juvat. — Fortune favors the brave.**

152. Adjectives of the third declension which end in **-is** have the masculine and feminine alike in the nominative singular and are called adjectives of *two endings*: **fortis**, **forte**. Learn the declension of **fortis**, § 571.

153.

VOCABULARY

perī'culum, -ī, n., *danger*.

tem'pus, **tem'poris**, n., *time*.

vigi'lia, -ae, f., *watch* (part of the night).

bre'vis, -e, *short*.

for'tis, -e, *brave*.

gra'vis, -e, *heavy, severe*.

le'vis, -e, *light* (in weight).

om'nis, -e, *all, every*.

liben'ter, adv., *gladly*.

labō'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *labor, work*.

pro'perō, -ā're, ā'vī, -ā'tus, *hurry, hasten*.

154. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

temporary

* brevity

grave

fortitude

levity

omnibus

peril

vigil

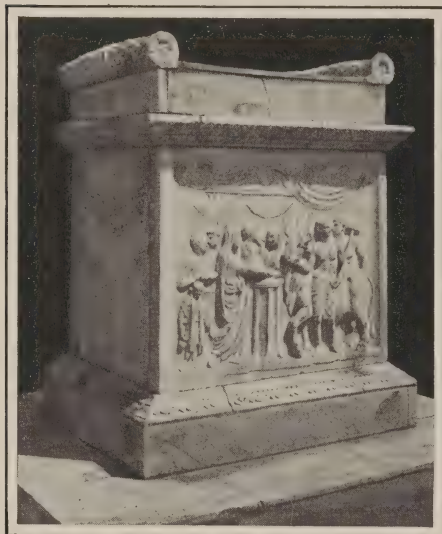
EXERCISES

155. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Brevi tempore servi regis liberabuntur. 2. Pars civium a forti navia laudabatur. 3. Cives gravibus lapidibus vulnerati erant. 4. Omnes nautae ex urbe in nave properaverunt et in mari navigabant. 5. Centurio levi gladio pugnaverit.

* From the Roman dramatic poet, Terence.

(b) 1. Tertiā vigiliā noctis militēs in magnō periculō erant. 2. Virī in agrīs libenter labōrāverant. 3. Militēs fortēs in castrīs saepe hiemāvērunt. 4. Decima legiō ā Gallīs nōn saepe superāta erat.



A Roman Altar.

Showing the sacrifice of a bull.

5. Pictūrās multās et magnās in mēnsā vidēbāmus.

156. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The nights in the summer were short. 2. The book will be light, but the stone will be heavy. 3. The good citizens always love a good king and do not fear (him). 4. The brave citizen had always been praised by the consul. 5. In the third watch of the night part of the soldiers were in camp.

(b) 1. Good children are often glad to work (gladly work). 2. The tired citizens had often been censured by the brave leader. 3. In the summer all the sailors hastened to the ships with great swiftness. 4. A watch is a part of the night. 5. The boy had a heavy stone and wounded a large animal in (his) father's field.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

157. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Brevī tempore. 2. Tertiā vigiliā. 3. Cum militibus decimae legiōnis.

LESSON XVIII

SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

*Fas est et ab hoste doceri. — It is right to learn even from a foe.**

158. Adjectives of the third declension not ending in **-er** or **-is** and not of the comparative degree have one ending. Learn the declension of **potēns**, § 572.

159. The **passive of the second conjugation** is formed according to the same rules as that of the first conjugation. See Lesson XV.

(a) Conjugate **moneō** according to the rules before consulting the book. Compare with § 587.

160.

VOCABULARY

Rō'ma, -ae, f., *Rome*.

de'cem, adj., *ten*.

po'tēns, **poten'tis**, adj., *powerful*,
mighty.

vē'lōx, **vēlō'cis**, adj., *swift*.

prōmo'veō, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'-
tus, *move forward*.

reti'neō, -ē're, -uī, **reten'tus**,
restrain, detain, retain.

dē'leō, -ē're, -ē'vī, -ē'tus, *destroy*.

161. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

velocity

potential

promote

retain

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

162. *Translate and analyze each form:*

(a) 1. Labōrat, monēmur, datur. 2. Vīsaē sunt, vīdērunt, videntur. 3. Tenētur, tenēbātur, tenuerant. 4. Mōvī, mōtus est, movēbitur. 5. Habēbit, vidēbāris, culpāberis.

* Literally: *To be taught even by a foe.*

(b) 1. Dēlēvit, properāvit, dedit. 2. Monuerāmus, vīsī erāmus, tenuerint. 3. Dēlēbantur, datum est, monitī sumus. 4. Vulnerātī erātis, celābitur, vocāta eris. 5. Fuerant, erātis, fuimus.

163. Translate, marking long vowels:

(a) 1. We had, you were seen, they have been restrained. 2. He had been, he had been wounded, I am seen. 3. They will have been warned, it was given, we are. 4. They (*neut.*) had been destroyed, we have destroyed, it is destroyed. 5. It has been moved, they will be seen, I have seen.

(b) 1. He had held, he had been seen, he will be held. 2. You (*sing.*) will be warned, you will warn, he had been warned. 3. You (*plur.*) hasten, you (*plur.*) are seen, they had given. 4. We shall have been blamed, you had moved, they will be seen, it had been given. 5. We shall be destroyed, they have been destroyed, you (*sing.*) will be destroyed.

EXERCISES

164. Translate, and conjugate each passive verb through the tense in which it is used:

(a) 1. Cīvēs malī ab imperātōre bonō culpātī sunt. 2. Decem celerēs nūntiī ab hostibus vidēbantur. 3. Urbs magna ā duce fortī dēlēta erat. 4. Rōma erat urbs potēns et virī Rōmae Gallōs multōs superāvērunt. 5. Lēgātus magnum numerum nāvium vėlōcium habuit.

(b) 1. Tertiā hōrā noctis militēs ex castrīs magnīs cum celeritāte properābunt. 2. Decimā hōrā ab explōrātōre celerī monēberis. 3. Dēfessae legiōnēs in castrīs retinēbantur. 4. Signa brevī tempore prōmōta erunt. 5. Filiī agricolārum cum patribus in agrīs saepe libenter labōrāverant.

165. Translate:

(a) 1. Many are wounded in a short time. 2. The brave lieutenants have not been detained in camp. 3. Many large

cities had been destroyed by the powerful general. 4. The tenth legion had been moved forward with great swiftness. 5. Ten swift ships were destroyed by the enemy.

(b) 1. The signals were seen by the Gauls at the third watch. 2. The lieutenant had been warned by all the scouts.



The Porta San Paolo.
One of the gates of modern Rome.

3. The mountains are high and the rivers are deep. 4. The fires of the enemy's camp were seen at night by the tired soldiers. 5. (There) had been a great slaughter of the enemy.

ORAL EXERCISE

166. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Ubi castra Caesaris erant?
2. Pugnābisne libenter?
3. Nōne cīvēs erunt potentēs?
4. Num noctēs brevēs sunt?
5. Quid in mēnsā est?

LESSON XIX

REVIEW

*Esse quam videri. — To be rather than to seem to be.**

167. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

culpō	vēlōx	annus	cīvis
hōra	nauta	celer	tempus
brevis	fortis	gravis	omnis

168. Form Drill. — 1. Name the passive personal endings. 2. Give the formula for making each tense in the indicative mood, passive voice. 3. Conjugate **dō** and **dēleō** through the indicative mood, active and passive voices. 4. Decline **celer**, **brevis**, **vēlōx**.

169. Syntax Drill. — 1. Name three uses for the ablative without a preposition. 2. Name two uses for the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. 3. How is an ablative of means distinguished from an ablative of agent? 4. Into what three classes are adjectives of the third declension divided? 5. How do we determine to which one of these classes an adjective belongs?

170. Composition. — Write in Latin five or more connected sentences, telling something about the general and his soldiers. (The best papers may be written on the board and read at sight by the class.)

171. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Erat magna caedēs hostium. 2. Tēlum fidō militī ā duce dabātur. 3. Aqua ad equōs albōs ā servīs portāta est.

* The motto of North Carolina.

4. Hominēs sunt miserī, sed nōn malī. 5. Multī et bonī cīvēs ā Caesare amātī erant. 6. Lēgātī magnā virtūte pugnābunt. 7. Pulchrī librī liberīs ā mātribus datī sunt. 8. Periculum semper timuimus. 9. Imperātor bonus cīvēs malōs culpāvit. 10. Tertiā vigiliā dux oppidum hostium dēlēvit.



A Street in Pompeii.

Showing ruts worn in the stone pavement by wagon wheels, and the stepping stones by which pedestrians crossed the street.

CINCINNĀTUS

172. Cincinnātus agricola Rōmānus erat et in agrō labōrābat. Miles nōn erat sed patriam amābat. Rōma in magnō periculō erat et nūntiī ad Cincinnātum mittēbantur. Nūntiī bonum virum in agrō arantem (*plowing*) vidēbant. Cincinnātō periculum patriae nārrāvērunt et eum (*him*) ad bellum vocāvērunt. Tum Cincinnātus erat dictātor. Potēns imperātor erat et brevī tempore hostēs superāvit et victor ad agrōs properāvit. Agricola fortis ab omnibus amātus et laudātus est.

LESSON XX

POSSUM. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

Possunt quia posse videntur.—*They can because they think they can.**

173. Conjugation of **possum**, *I am able* or *I can* (= **potis**, *able* + **sum**, *I am*). Principal parts: **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**. It has no passive voice.

(a) **Possum** = **pot sum**; the **t** becomes **s** before those forms of the verb **sum** which begin with **s**. The perfect stem tenses are formed according to the formula given for those tenses. See § 72.

Conjugate the indicative mood of **possum**, according to the above. Compare with § 591.

174.

VOCABULARY

moe'nia , -ium, n., <i>fortifications</i> (walls of a city).	<i>ought, must</i> (followed by infinitive).
pa'lūs , -ū'dis, f., <i>swamp, marsh</i> .	pos'sum , pos'se , po'tuī , <i>can, be able</i> (followed by infinitive).
po'pulus , -ī, m., <i>people, nation</i> .	com'pleō , -ē're, -ē'vī, -ē'tus, <i>fill, cover</i> .
cotīdiā'nus , ¹ -a, -um, <i>daily</i> .	fe'rē , adv., <i>almost</i> .
Rōmā'nus , -ī, m., <i>a Roman</i> .	cotī'diē , ¹ adv., <i>daily, every day</i> .
Rōmā'nus , -a, -um, <i>Roman</i> .	
dē'beō , -ē're, -uī, -itus, <i>owe</i> ;	

175. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*
possible complementary debit population

* Virgil. Literally: *Because they seem to be able*.

¹ Spelled also with two t's.

RULE

176. Complementary Infinitive. — **Possum** and some other verbs require an infinitive to complete their meaning; this is called a *complementary infinitive*.

Caesar could fight. **Caesar** pugnāre potuit.

We ought to love our country. **Patriam** amāre dēbēmus.

EXERCISES

177. Translate:

(a) 1. Urbēs dēlēre potuerant. 2. Potuistīne monēre libērōs? 3. Omnēs hostēs superāre potuimus. 4. Tempore proelī perīculum timēre nōn dēbēmus. 5. Ā palūde ad rīpam flūminis castra movēre possumus.

(b) 1. Cum populō Rōmānō labōrāre nōn potuērunt. 2. Omnia moenia ab hostibus cotīdiē vidēbantur. 3. Mōns cōpiīs hostium complētus erat. 4. Tertiā vigiliā noctis imperātor magnō cum clāmōre mīlitibus signum dedit. 5. Rōmānī cum hostibus ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs pugnāvērunt.

178. Translate:

(a) 1. Caesar ought not to fear danger. 2. The Romans cannot defeat all (their) enemies in the swamp. 3. We could not overcome the Roman forces with swords and javelins. 4. The good soldiers were able to fight daily with great courage. 5. The Roman people could not love the enemies of (their) native land.

(b) 1. The banks of the broad river were high. 2. The swords had been retained with care. 3. Ten powerful cities have been seized by the enemy and filled with soldiers. 4. The boy's books are heavy, (his) sister's light. 5. Almost all the fortifications of the enemy were attacked in the third year of the war.

179. Composition. — Make five statements in Latin about things that are or have been possible.

LESSON XXI

THIRD CONJUGATION. APPPOSITION

*Montani semper liberi. — Mountaineers are always free.**

180. Verbs of the **third conjugation** end in **-ere** in the present infinitive. Principal parts of **dūcō**, *I lead*: **dū'cō**, **dū'cere**, **dū'xī**, **duc'tus**. Present stem, **dūce-**; perfect stem, **dūx-**; participial stem, **duct-**.

181. **Present tense** = *present stem* (with **e** changed to **i**) + *personal endings*. The vowel of the ending in the first person singular is simply **ō**, in the third person plural **u**.

Imperfect tense = *present stem* (with **e** lengthened) + *tense sign ba* + *personal endings*.

Future tense = *present stem* + *personal endings*. The vowel of the ending in the first person singular is **a** instead of **e**, in the second person singular and the first and second persons plural long **ē**.

182.

Present Indicative

SINGULAR

I lead.

dū'cō

dū'cis

dū'cit

PLURAL

dū'cim^{us}

dū'cit^{is}

dū'cunt

Imperfect Indicative

I was leading.

dūcē'bam

dūcē'bās

dūcē'bat

dūcēbā'm^{us}

dūcēbā't^{is}

dūcē'bant

Future Indicative

I shall lead.

dū'cam

dū'cēs

dū'cet

dūcē'm^{us}

dūcē't^{is}

dū'cent

* The motto of West Virginia.

183.

VOCABULARY

dū'cō, -ere, dū'xī, duc'tus, *lead*.ēdū'cō, -ere, ēdū'xī, ēduc'tus,
lead out.redūc'ō, -ere, redū'xī, reduc'-
tus, *lead back, withdraw*.mit'tō, -ere, mī'sī, mis'sus, *send*.āmit'tō, -ere, āmī'sī, āmis'sus,
send away, lose.remit'tō, -ere, remī'sī, remis'-
sus, *send back*.pō'nō, -ere, po'suī, po'situs, *put*,
place, (with castra) pitch.184. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

position

mission

reduce

remit

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

185. *Analyze each Latin form:*

(a) 1. *Ēdūcent, ēdūcēbat, redūcimus.* 2. *Mittēs, mittētis, mittunt.* 3. *Pōnēbant, pōnimus, castra pōnent.* 4. *Āmittis, āmittitis, āmittō.* 5. *Amat, timet, dūcam.*

(b) 1. *Mittēbās, pōnēbāmus, remittō.* 2. *Redūcam, mittit, āmittent.* 3. *Dūcet, dūcit, dūcēs.* 4. *Prōmovet, ēdūcēbātis, pōnēmus.* 5. *Redūcēs, redūcimus, redūcunt.*

186. *Translate:*

(a) 1. They were losing, you lose, you will lose. 2. You will send back, you are sending back, you send back. 3. I shall lead out, they will lead out, you will lead out. 4. We shall fight, we shall move, we shall send. 5. We are leading, they were pitching camp.

(b) 1. He will lead out, we were placing, you are sending. 2. I lose, we shall place, we were leading. 3. They will lead, we shall lose, I am sending. 4. He is sending away, we place, they lead. 5. We were sending, I shall send, you were leading.

RULES

187. **Apposition.** — A noun or pronoun in apposition with another noun or pronoun agrees with it in case.

We saw the city of Rome. **Vīdimus urbem Rōmam.**

The boy loves his sister Julia. **Puer sorōrem Iūliam amat.**

188. Parsing. — To parse a verb, give :

(1) Conjugation, (2) principal parts, (3) voice, (4) mood, (5) tense, (6) person, (7) number, (8) rule.

In § 189, *a*, 1, **remittit** would be parsed as follows : **remittit** : *third conjugation ; principal parts, remittō, remittere, remisī, remissus ; active voice ; indicative mood ; present tense ; third person ; singular number ; agreeing with the subject nauta. Rule : A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

EXERCISES

189. Translate,¹ and parse each indicative verb form :

(*a*) 1. Nauta, potēns vir, nāvēs remittit. 2. Caesar, bonus dux, castra pōnet. 3. Pater bonus ad filiam Iūliam multa dōna mittit. 4. Virī omnia tēla āmittent. 5. Caesar, imperātor magnus, ad proelium mīlitēs Rōmānōs saepe ēdūcit.



Roman Bow, Arrow, and Javelin.

(*b*) 1. Animālia in vīcum redūcere nōn potuērunt. 2. Virī frūmentō decem vēlōcēs nāvēs complēverant. 3. Tertiā vigiliā fidus cīvis ad oppidum nūntium mittet. 4. Dux circum mūrum virōs ferē cotīdiē dūcet et portās urbis vidēbit. 5. Virī semper fortēs fuērunt et patriam amāvērunt.

190. Translate :

(*a*) 1. Boys often lose (their) books. 2. The citizens will place heavy stones on the wall. 3. The children are leading the horses to the river and will give the animals water. 4. We had not been able to destroy the cities of the enemy. 5. In the summer of the third year of the war Caesar will

¹ Pronounce the Latin words in groups and translate in groups.

break camp and will send the soldiers back into the city of Rome.

(b) 1. Many (persons) have been wounded with swords by (their) companions. 2. We could not pitch the camp in a swamp. 3. We were glad to send (gladly sent) the women and children back to the fortifications. 4. The Gauls ought to send (their) weapons with great care. 5. The large ships will have been seized by Caesar.

ORAL EXERCISE

191. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid nauta videt? 2. Estne nauta in marī? 3. Ubi Cæsar castra pōnet? 4. Duxne virōs ēdūcit? 5. Labōrāsne cum diligentīā cotidiē?



Roman Boxers.

This is commonly called Dares and Entellus, from a famous encounter described in Virgil's *Aeneid*, Book V, lines 362-484.

LESSON XXII

THIRD CONJUGATION. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

*Lux et veritas. — Light and truth.**

192. Following the rules in § 72 conjugate *dūcō* through the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect active*. Compare with § 588.

193. VOCABULARY

<i>auxi'lium</i> , <i>auxi'li</i> , n., aid, help; pl., auxiliary forces, troops.	<i>scri'bō</i> , <i>scri'bere</i> , <i>scrip'si</i> , <i>scrip'tus</i> , write.
<i>finis</i> , -is, (-ium), m., end; pl., territory.	<i>cōnscri'bō</i> , -ere, -p'si, -p'tus, enroll, enlist, levy.
<i>i'ter</i> , <i>iti'neris</i> , n., journey, road, march.	<i>cur'rō</i> , <i>cur'rere</i> , <i>cucur'ri</i> , <i>cur'sus</i> , run.
<i>lūx</i> , <i>lū'cis</i> , f., light.	<i>relin'quō</i> , <i>relin'quere</i> , <i>reli'quī</i> , <i>relic'tus</i> , leave.
<i>prīn'ceps</i> , -cipis, m., chief.	<i>trāns</i> , prep. with acc., across.
<i>prī'mus</i> , -a, -um, first; <i>prīmā</i> <i>lūce</i> , at daybreak.	<i>cūr</i> , interrog. adv., why?

194. What Latin words do the following suggest?

scripture current primary relinquish

RULE

195. **Ablative of Cause.** — Cause may be expressed by the ablative usually without a preposition.

The man ran from fear. Vir timōre cucurrit.

Caesar praised the soldiers on account of their victories. Caesar victōriis militēs laudāvit.

*The motto of Yale University.

EXERCISES

196. *Translate, and explain the use of each ablative and accusative:*

(a) 1. Dux diligentiā fidum militem laudāvit. 2. Liberi periculō cucurrerunt. 3. Princeps victoriā magnā virōs laudābit. 4. Caesar auxilia trāns flūmen dūxerit. 5. Rēx multās et longās litterās ad centuriōnem scrīpsit.

(b) 1. Iter nōn longum erat. 2. Ad castra auxilia remittere debēmus. 3. In finibus Gallōrum multōs milites cōscripserit. 4. Ex finibus hostium in urbem rēgis cucurristī. 5. Primā lūce princeps in castris auxilia reliquit.

197. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The end of the journey will be in a swamp. 2. The soldiers ran because of (their) great fear. 3. The Romans cannot send back aid to the town on account of the great danger. 4. The journey into the territory of the enemy was short. 5. The mothers will praise the children for (their) diligence.

(b) 1. I shall write letters and send (them) to (my) friends. 2. In time of war the men leave the women and children in the town. 3. The horse ran with great swiftness. 4. At daybreak we had led the soldiers out of camp. 5. Ten weary men left the battle and were blamed by the chief.

ORAL EXERCISE

198. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr dux laudābitur? 2. Ubi (*place*) primā legiō fuerat?
3. Cūr potentēs hostēs superābantur? 4. Cūr virī currunt?
5. Quid rēx scrīpsit?

LESSON XXIII

THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

*Nec pluribus impar. — A match for many.**

199. Following the rules in Lesson XV, conjugate *dūcō* through the *indicative passive*. Compare with § 588. Note the only peculiarity in the passive.

200.

VOCABULARY

cī'vitās, -tā'tis, f., state.

co'hors, cohor'tis, f., cohort (the tenth part of a legion).

e'ques, e'quitis, m., horseman; pl., cavalry.

lēx, lē'gis, f., law.

nō'men, -inis, n., name.

ob'ses, ob'sidis, m. and f., hostage, pledge, security.

ōrā'tiō, -ō'nis, f., speech, oration.

pe'des, pe'ditis, m., foot soldier, pl., infantry.

vul'nus, vul'neris, n., wound.

pār, (gen.) pa'ris, adj., equal.

201. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

legal

equestrian

nominate

pedestrian

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

202. *Analyze each form :*

1. *Ductī erant, mīsīt, curram, cōnscrīptī sumus.* 2. *Videt, dūcet, vīsae erimus, ēdūxit.* 3. *Positum erat, relinquare, scribētur, missa est.* 4. *Dūceris, dūcēris, āmittēbantur, dabitur.* 5. *Habēbit, amāberis, remittentur, ēdūciminī.*

* The motto of Louis XIV. Literally: *Not unequal to more.*

203. Translate:

1. They have led out, we shall be sent. 2. The letter will be written, had been written. 3. They had run, you (*plur.*) will run, I run. 4. We had been led back, it was placed, I led. 5. It has been moved, we shall move, I was seeing.

RULE

204. Ablative of Specification.—The ablative of specification may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to define its application. It answers the question “In what respect?”

He was king in name. Rēx nōmine erat.

The boy was small in body. Puer corpore parvus erat.

He was not surpassed in courage. Virtūte nōn superābātur.

EXERCISES

205. Translate, and parse all the nouns in the ablative case:

- (a) 1. Principēs virtūte ab obsidibus superātī sunt. 2. Equī ducum celeritāte parēs erunt. 3. Lēgēs civitātis bonae erant. 4. Equus celeritāte superābātur. 5. Auxilia virtūte equitēs superāvērunt.

- (b) 1. Ōrātiō longa scribētur. 2. Centuriō decimae legiōnis in castrīs relictus erat. 3. Nōmina centuriōnum in librō scribuntur. 4. Pār numerus peditum et auxiliōrum ā Caesare cōscribētur. 5. Dux fortis magnā celeritāte currit, et tertiam cohortem legiōnis reliquit.

206. Translate:

- (a) 1. (There) was a city, Rome by name. 2. The cavalry and infantry will be equal in courage. 3. The state was destroyed by bad citizens. 4. At daybreak the hostages were sent into the city. 5. The chief's friend has written many orations.

(b) 1. They blamed the king on account of the severe laws. 2. Many cohorts had been enlisted across the river, and Caesar pitched his camp in the territory of the enemy.



Roman Cavalry.

3. The town has many gates, and in time of war many soldiers are left on the wall. 4. They sent the horseman into camp on account of his wounds. 5. In the first watch we can see the camp of the Gauls.

ORAL EXERCISE

207. *Answer these questions in Latin, using the passive voice in 1, 3, and 4:*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Quis litterās scribet? | 2. Ubi castra pōnēbās? |
| 3. Ubi tēla relinquēbantur? | 4. Quis ōrātiōnēs scrībit? |
| 5. Cūr pedes cucurrit? | |

LESSON XXIV

REVIEW

*Justitia omnibus. — Justice for all.**

208. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can, which seem to be derived from the following :

populus	dēbeō	possum	compleō
dūcō	mittō	pōnō	auxilium
fīnis	iter	lūx	prīnceps
prīmus	scribō	currō	relinquō
lēx	nōmen	ōrātiō	pedes

209. Form Drill. — 1. Name each of the three stems of *laudō*, *moveō*, *mittō*. 2. In the third conjugation of what tenses are the following the signs : *e*, *i*, *ba*, *era*, *eri*? 3. Conjugate *possum* through the indicative mood.

210. Syntax Drill. — 1. What is a *complementary infinitive*? 2. Give the rule for *apposition*, *cause*, *specification*, and illustrate each with a Latin sentence. 3. Give the principal parts and the stems of the following verbs : *dūcō*, *pōnō*, *scribō*, *currō*, *relinquō*.

211. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Agricola bonus in agrīs equōs multōs et vėlōcēs habēbit.
2. Partem hostium superāre potuerāmus. 3. Cōpiaē Rōmānae in rīpā flūminis castra pōnēbant. 4. Hostēs ex oppidō mittere nōn possumus. 5. Equī trāns agrum in silvās cucurrērunt.
6. Primā lūce militēs castra relīquērunt. 7. In Galliā imperātor militēs fortēs cōscripserat. 8. Victōria ducis cīvitatī nūtiābitur. 9. Obsidēs in vīcum parvum remittentur.

* The motto of the District of Columbia.

10. Litterae multae ā rēge scrīptae sunt et trāns flūmen in fīnēs hostium missae sunt.

MAGNUS IMPERĀTOR

212. Caesar erat magnus imperātor Rōmānus. Multōs mīlitēs habēbat. Omnēs mīlitēs fortēs erant sed Caesar decimae legiōnis mīlitēs laudābat. Erant multa et longa itinera et mīlitēs dēfessī saepe erant. Tertiā vigiliā imperātor in rīpā flūminis hostēs vīdit et ex castrīs cōpiās vocāvit.



A Bridge near Rome.

Erat parva palūs inter cōpiās Caesaris et Gallōrum sed virtūs legiōnum magna erat et mīlitēs perīcula nōn timēbant. Brevī tempore Rōmānī gladiīs et pīlīs Gallōs superāvērunt. Multōs agrōs vāstāvērunt et multa et magna oppida hostium dēlēbantur. Signum tubā dabātur et mīlitēs ad imperātorem vocābantur. Caesar mīlitibus fortibus et lēgātīs dōna magna dabat.

LESSON XXV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Magna est vis consuetudinis. — Great is the force of habit.

213. Adjectives expressing quality are compared,¹ in Latin as in English, in three ways, *regularly, irregularly, and by the use of the Latin words for "more" and "most."*

214. Regular Comparisons. — The comparative is formed by adding *-ior, neut., -ius*, and the superlative by adding *-issimus, -a, -um* to the base of the positive.

Long, longus; longer, longior; longest, longissimus.

Swift, vĕlōx; swifter, vĕlōcior; swiftest, vĕlōcissimus.

(a) The comparative may be translated *swifter, more swift, too swift, or rather swift*; the superlative, *swiftest, most swift, or very swift*.

215. *Compare the following:*

brevis fortis altus potēns

216. The *comparative* is declined like adjectives of the third declension, two endings, the neuter ending in *-ius*. They are *not* *i*-stems.

217. *Longior, longer.* BASE, *longior-*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Mas. and Fem.	NEUTER	Mas. and Fem.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> lon'gior	lon'gius	longiō'rēs	longiō'ra
<i>Gen.</i> longiō'ris	longiō'ris	longiō'rum	longiō'rum
<i>Dat.</i> longiō'rī	longiō'rī	longiō'ribus	longiō'ribus
<i>Acc.</i> longiō'rem	lon'gius	longiō'rēs	longiō'ra
<i>Abl.</i> longiō're	longiō're	longiō'ribus	longiō'ribus

¹ Compare §§ 677 and 678.

218. The *superlative* is declined like **magnus, -a, -um.**

219.

VOCABULARY

altitū'dō, altitū'dinis, f., <i>height,</i> <i>depth.</i>	pāx, pā'cis, f., <i>peace.</i>
Germā'nia, -ae, f., <i>Germany.</i>	pōns, pon'tis, m., <i>bridge.</i>
Germā'nus, -ī, m., <i>a German.</i>	vīs, —, —, vim, vī, f., <i>force; pl.,</i> <i>vī'rēs, vī'rium, etc., strength</i> <i>(usually bodily strength).</i>
Germā'nus, -a, -um, <i>German.</i>	vōx, vō'cis, f., <i>voice, word, ex-</i> <i>pression.</i>
magnitū'dō, magnitū'dinis, f., <i>greatness, size.</i>	quam, adv., <i>than.</i>
multitū'dō, multitū'dinis, f., <i>great number, multitude.</i>	aut, conj., <i>or.</i>

220. What Latin words do the following suggest?

multitude

vim

vocal

magnitude

RULE

✓ 221. Ablative with the Comparative. — The comparative is followed by the ablative¹ when *quam* (*than*) is omitted.

The boy is braver than his sister. Puer fortior est sorōre.

The javelin is longer than the sword. Pīlum longius gladiō est.

EXERCISES

222. Translate, and decline each adjective:

(a) 1. Germānī fortiōrēs fuērunt Gallīs. 2. Iter brevius erit. 3. Rēgēs Germānī semper cīvibus potentiōrēs erant. 4. Virī vīribus fēminās superant. 5. Hominēs in pāce saepe fortiōrēs sunt quam in bellō.

(b) 1. Multitūdō tēlōrum gravissimōrum in ponte relīcta est. 2. Cohors in fīnibus Germānōrum cotīdiē cōnscripta erat. 3. Imperātor vōce cōsulis vocābātur. 4. Altitūdō mūrī est magna. 5. Patrēs magnitūdine corporum filiōs superābunt.

¹ This ablative can be used only instead of the nominative or accusative.



A Roman Triumph.

223. Translate:

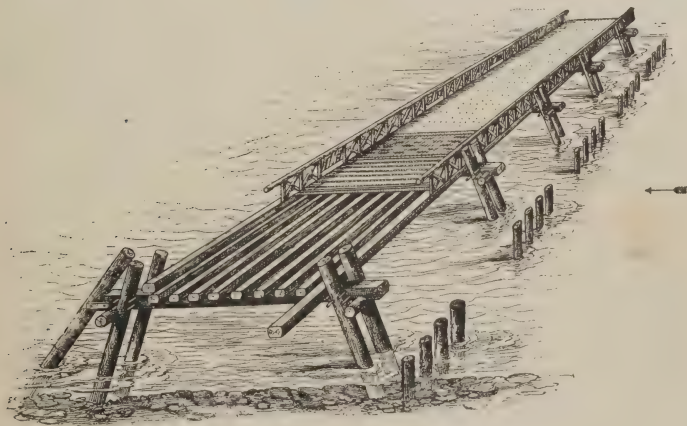
(a) 1. Seas are deeper and wider than rivers. 2. Nights are very short in summer. 3. The infantry are often braver than the cavalry. 4. The consul's speeches are longer than (those) of the citizens. 5. Caesar with his powerful cavalry excelled the Germans in strength.

(b) 1. He was king of the Germans in name. 2. The mountain surpassed the wall in height. 3. The bravest men love peace. 4. The weary infantry could not pitch camp in Germany. 5. The Roman cohorts surpassed the Gauls in the great number of their men.

ORAL EXERCISE

224. Answer these questions in Latin:

1. Eratne Caesar fortior Mārcō?
2. Ubi hominēs fortissimī sunt?
3. Estne iter breve?
4. Cūr liberī laudābantur?
5. Nōne decem cohortēs in legiōne sunt?



Caesar's Famous Bridge across the Rhine.

LESSON XXVI

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ER* AND *-LIS*

*Similia similibus curantur. — Like cures like.**

225. Adjectives ending in *-er* form their superlatives by adding *-rimus*, *-a*, *-um*, to the nominative singular masculine of the positive.

mi'ser	mise'rior	miser'rimus
ā'cer	ā'crior ¹	ācer'rimus

226. Five adjectives in *-lis* form their superlatives by adding *-limus*, *-a*, *-um* to the base of the positive.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fa'cilis, <i>easy</i>	faci'lior	facil'limus
diffi'cilis, <i>difficult</i>	diffici'lior	difficil'limus
si'milis, <i>like</i>	simi'lior	simil'limus
dissi'milis, <i>unlike</i>	dissimi'lior	dissimil'limus
hu'milis, <i>low</i>	humi'lior	humil'limus

227. Compare the following:

celer	pulcher	liber	facilis
-------	---------	-------	---------

228.

VOCABULARY

disci'pulus, <i>-ī, m., pupil.</i>	si'milis, <i>-e, like, similar.</i>
mōs, mō'ris, <i>m., custom; pl., character, manners.</i>	dissi'milis, <i>-e, unlike, dissimilar.</i>
diffi'cilis, <i>-e, difficult.</i>	ni'hil (or nil), <i>n., indeclinable noun, nothing.</i>
fa'cilis, <i>-e, easy.</i>	prīvā'tus, <i>-a, -um, private.</i>

* Literally: *Like things are cared for by like.*

¹ The comparative is formed regularly, *i.e.* by adding *-ior* to the base of the positive.

229. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

disciple

similar

morals

facility

RULE

230. Dative with Adjectives. — The dative is used to complete the meaning of adjectives meaning *like*,¹ *unlike*, *equal*, *unequal*, and *near*.

A sword is not like a javelin. Gladius pīlō nōn similis est.

The boys are not equal to their fathers in courage. Puerī virtūte patribus nōn parēs sunt.

EXERCISES

231. Translate:

(a) 1. Iter facillimum erit. 2. Bellum pācī dissimillimum semper fuit. 3. Discipulus mōribus patris similis erat. 4. Nihil bonīs amīcīs pār esse potest. 5. Itinera difficiliōra fuērunt.

(b) 1. Prīvātus cīvis pār vīribus equitī erat. 2. Oppidum pulchrius urbe vīsum erat. 3. Dux multa tēla ad mīlītēs mīsīt. 4. Multa et pulcherrima animālia in marī vīsa sunt. 5. Caesar in flūmine Galliae pontem aedificāvit.

232. Translate:

(a) 1. The soldiers were very active. 2. The book is not difficult, but very easy. 3. Javelins are unlike swords. 4. Nothing had been more difficult than a journey on the sea. 5. The character of the Romans was very unlike that of the Germans.

(b) 1. The soldiers had been led out of the camp at day-break. 2. Marcus had been more active than his brother. 3. The ditch around the wall was very deep and wide. 4. The river is rather long and very deep. 5. Many bridges have been built across² very wide rivers.

¹ With *similis*, use the genitive when the reference is to a person.

² *Across* (*on*, as in this sentence), *in* with the ablative; *across* (*on the other side of*), *trāns* with the accusative.

ORAL EXERCISE

233. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Estne liber difficilior ? 2. Nōne puer discipulus bonus est ? 3. Erantne servī parēs dominīs ? 4. Quid potest pulchrius esse rosā ? 5. Estne urbs similis oppidō ?



The Arch of Titus at Rome.

Compare this with the picture on page 24.

LESSON XXVII

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Salus populi suprema lex esto. — Let the safety of the people be the highest law.*

234. The following adjectives are irregularly compared:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bo'nus, good	me'lior, better	op'timus, best
ma'lus, bad	pe'ior, worse	pes'simus, worst
mag'nus, great	ma'ior, greater	max'imus, greatest
par'vus, small	mi'nor (minus), smaller	mi'nimus, smallest
mul'tus, much		plū'rimus, most
mul'tum (neut.)	plūs, more	plū'rimum, most
mul'tī, many	plū'rēs, more	plū'rimī, most
se'nex, old	se'nior (ma'ior nā'tū ¹), older, elder	max'imus nātū, oldest, eldest
iu'venis, young	iū'nior (mi'nor nā'tū), younger	mi'nimus nā'tū, youngest

235. Four adjectives with regular comparatives have two irregular superlatives:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ex'terus, outward	exte'rior, outer	extrē'mus or ex'timus, outermost, last
in'ferus, low	infe'rior, lower	in'fimus or imus, lowest
pos'terus, following	poste'rior, later	postrē'mus or pos'tumus, last, next
su'perus, above	supe'rior, higher	suprē'mus or sum'mus, highest, last

* The motto of Missouri.

¹ Nātū, in age, is ablative of specification and does not change its form as do maior, maximus, minor, and minimus to agree with their nouns.

236. The following adjectives have no positive, but are formed from prepositions :

PREP.	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(cis, citrā)	—	cite'rior, <i>hither</i>	ci'timus, <i>hithermost</i>
(in, intrā)	—	inte'rior, <i>inner</i>	in'timus, <i>innermost</i>
(prae, prō)	—	pri'or, <i>former</i>	pri'mus, <i>first</i>
(prope)	—	pro'pior, <i>nearer</i>	prox'imus, <i>nearest, next</i>
(ultrā)	—	ulte'rior, <i>farther</i>	ul'timus, <i>last</i>

237. Adjectives which have a vowel before the ending -us usually form the comparative and superlative by the use of the adverbs *magis, more* and *maximē, most*; idō'neus, *magis idō'neus, maximē idō'neus*.

238.

VOCABULARY

cite'rior, cite'rius, <i>hither</i> .	pos'terus, -a, -um, <i>following</i> .
ex'terus, -a, -um, <i>outward</i> .	pro'pior, pro'pius, <i>nearer, next</i> .
in'ferus, -a, -um, <i>low</i> .	se'nex, gen., se'nis, <i>old</i> .
iu'venis, -e, <i>young</i> .	su'perus, -a, -um, <i>above</i> .
idō'neus, -a, -um, <i>fit, suitable</i> .	ulte'rior, -ius, <i>farther</i> .
pri'or, pri'us, <i>former</i> .	Helvē'tiī, -ō'rum, m., <i>Helvetians</i> .

239. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

exterior priority juvenile senior

EXERCISES

240. *Translate, and compare all the adjectives:*

(a) 1. Virtūs Helvētiōrum maxima erat. 2. Vīdimus minus oppidum. 3. Puer maior nātū est sorōre. 4. Summus¹ mōns ab hostibus vīsus est. 5. Sumus² in inferiōre parte flūminis.

(b) 1. Nihil melius est quam bonī mōrēs. 2. Caesar in ceteriōre Galliā obsidēs retinuit. 3. Propiōrēs Rōmae quam

¹ Top of the mountain.

² Compare summus and sumus.

castris fuerāmus. 4. Proximā nocte in ulteriōrem Galliam
cōpiās mīsimus. 5. Prīma pars
librī facilior extrēmā habita est.

241. Translate:

(a) 1. Small animals are often rather beautiful. 2. The boy's companion can be very good. 3. Very many wars were very long. 4. The youngest soldiers are often the most active. 5. The citizens are very bad.

(b) 1. Hither Gaul is nearer to Rome than farther Gaul. 2. The centurion's wounds had been very severe. 3. (There) are forests on the top of the mountain. 4. The smaller ships were better than the larger (ones). 5. We are hastening into the territory of the enemy and shall destroy the smaller towns.



Light-armed Roman Soldier.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

242. Commit to memory with the translations:

1. In citeriōre Galliā. 2. In ulteriōre Galliā. 3. Proximā nocte. 4. Castra mōvit. 5. Castra posuit.

LESSON XXVIII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Cedant arma togæ. — “Peace hath her victories no less renowned than war.”*

243. Adverbs¹ are derived from adjectives. They are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base: *wide*, *lātus*; *widely*, *lātē*. From adjectives of the third declension they are formed by adding *-ter* or *-iter* to the base:² *sharp*, *ācer*; *sharply*, *ācriter*.

244. The comparison of adverbs is like that of the adjectives from which they are derived, except that the comparative ends in *-ius*, and the superlative in *-ē*.

Adj. <i>lātus</i> , wide	<i>lātior</i> , wider	<i>lātissimus</i> , widest
Adv. <i>lātē</i> , widely	<i>lātius</i> , more widely	<i>lātissimē</i> , most widely
Adj. <i>ācer</i> , sharp	<i>ācrior</i> , sharper	<i>ācerrimus</i> , sharpest
Adv. <i>ācriter</i> , sharply	<i>ācrius</i> , more sharply	<i>ācerrimē</i> , most sharply

245.

VOCABULARY

<i>Ci'cerō</i> , -ō'nis, m., <i>Cicero</i> .	<i>dīligen'ter</i> , carefully, diligently.
<i>col'lis</i> , -is, m., <i>hill</i> .	<i>fa'cile</i> , easily.
<i>ge'rō</i> , <i>ge'rere</i> , <i>ges'sī</i> , <i>ges'tus</i> , carry on; with <i>bellum</i> , wage war.	<i>for'titer</i> , bravely.
<i>ā'criter</i> , sharply, fiercely.	<i>pa'rum</i> , adv., little.
<i>cele'riter</i> , quickly.	<i>quam</i> , followed by the superla- tive, as possible.
<i>dī'ū</i> , <i>dīū'tius</i> , <i>dīūtis'simē</i> , long, for a long time.	<i>quōmo'dō</i> , interrog. adv., how.
	<i>at'que</i> , conj., and also, and.
	<i>sex</i> , indeclinable adj., six.

* Cicero. The motto of Wyoming. Literally: *Let arms give way to the toga*.

¹ Compare §§ 703-706.

² Except *facile*, easily. When the base ends in *-nt* (potent-), it drops the *t* before adding *-ter*.

246. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

facile

celerity

sextette

acid

RULE

247. **Ablative of Degree of Difference.** — Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Six feet higher. **Sex pedibus altior.**

The boy is a year older than his sister. **Puer annō senior est quam soror.**

(a) The ablative **annō** denotes the degree of difference in age.

EXERCISES

248. *Translate; compare each adjective and adverb:*

(a) 1. Diū atque ācriter pugnāvērunt. 2. Pater multīs annīs senior quam filius est. 3. Lēgātī quam dīligentissimē labōrāverant. 4. Mōns plūrimīs pedibus altior colle erat. 5. Cicerō sex annīs maior nātū quam Caesar fuit.

(b) 1. Bella in extrēmīs finibus Helvētiōrum gesta sunt. 2. Fēmina minus facile atque minus celeriter cucurrit quam filia. 3. Rōmānī cum Germānīs bellum saepissimē gerēbant. 4. Rōma citeriōrī Galliae quam ulteriōrī propior est. 5. Milītēs fortēs magna oppida hostium facillimē dēlēre possunt.

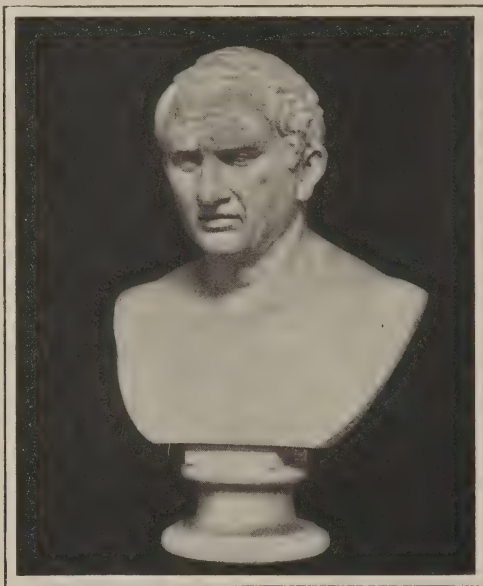
Note. — An adverb generally stands before the word which it modifies.

249. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Peace is better than war. 2. The trees were six feet higher than the wall. 3. The tired men could not fight longer. 4. The farmer labored more diligently than the sailor. 5. The enemy led out their forces as quickly as possible.

(b) 1. They will hasten by forced (very great) marches into the farthest territory of the Gauls. 2. The ships were very

small. 3. The commander-in-chief will wage war as fiercely as possible. 4. On the following night we seized the top of the mountain. 5. The old Roman fought more fiercely than his son.



Cicero.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

250. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Minus facile. 2. Diū atque ācriter. 3. Quam fortis-
simē. 4. Prīmā lūce. 5. Prīmā aestāte.

LESSON XXIX

REVIEW

*Nil sine numine. — Nothing without divine guidance.**

251. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can, that seem to be derived from the following :

pāx	vīs	vōx	facilis
similis	humilis	senex	iuvenis
prior	superus	diligenter	celeriter

252. Form and Word Drill. — 1. How are adjectives regularly compared? 2. How are adjectives ending in **-er** compared? 3. Give the list of five adjectives in **-lis** having peculiar superlatives. 4. How are comparatives declined? Decline **melior**. 5. How are superlatives declined? Decline **optimus**. 6. Compare **prior**, **facilis**, **propior**, **senex**, **citerior**, **nōbilis**, **superus**, **idōneus**, **īferus**. 7. Compare the Latin adjectives for the following, and form and compare the adverbs made from these adjectives:

<i>sharp</i>	<i>short</i>	<i>good</i> ¹	<i>quick</i>	<i>dear</i>
<i>difficult</i>	<i>faithful</i>	<i>brave</i>	<i>heavy</i>	<i>wide</i>
<i>free</i>	<i>bad</i>	<i>beautiful</i>	<i>small</i> ²	<i>swift</i>

253. Syntax Drill. — Review all the rules learned thus far.

* The motto of Colorado. Literally: *Nothing without divinity*.

¹ Adv. **bene**.

² Adv. **parum**.

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

254. 1. Lēgēs cīvitātis ā cīvibus bonīs laudātae sunt.
 2. Obsidēs multī ad Caesarem ā Germānīs missī sunt.
 3. Filius magnitudīne corporis patrem superat. 4. Gallī et
 Germānī dissimillimī erant. 5. Prīmā lūce discipulī trāns



Cornelia and Her Jewels.

- agrum cucurrērunt.
 6. Militēs Germānī
 brevissimō itinere et
 magnā cum celeritāte
 ad urbem properāver-
 ant et mūrōs dēlēver-
 ant. 7. Cōsulēs rēgi-
 bus meliōrēs saepe
 sunt. 8. Obsidēs
 trāns mare nāvibus
 portātī erant. 9. Iūlia
 iūnior est quam frāter
 Mārcus. 10. Ger-
 mānī fortius pugnāvē-
 runt quam pugnābunt.

CORNĒLIAE ŌRNĀ-
 MENTA

255. Cornēlia fēm-
 ina Rōmāna erat et op-
 tima māter. Filiōs

habēbat Tiberium et Gaium Gracchum. Māter et filiī Rōmam,
 maximam urbem, incolēbant.

Diligentiā Cornēliae mātris Gracchī Graecās litterās atque
 bonōs mōrēs docēbantur.

Campāna fēmīna Cornēliae sua ōrnāmenta, quae (*which*)
 pulcherrima erant, mōnstrābat et laudābat. Cornēliae dīxit,
 “Habēsne nūlla ōrnāmenta?”

Cornēlia respondit, “Meī puerī ōrnāmenta sunt mea.”

LESSON XXX

FOURTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

*Quorum magna pars fui. — In which I was a chief actor.**

256. The fourth declension consists of those nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ūs**. Those ending in **-us** in the nominative singular are masculine, with a few exceptions. Those whose nominative ends in **ū** are neuter.

257. **Exer'citus, m., army.** BASE, **exercit-**

SINGULAR	TERMINA- TIONS	PLURAL	TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i> exer'citus	us	exer'citūs	ūs
<i>Gen.</i> exer'citūs	ūs	exerci'tuum	uum
<i>Dat.</i> exerci'tuī	uī	exerci'tibus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> exer'citum	um	exer'citūs	ūs
<i>Abl.</i> exer'citū	ū	exerci'tibus	ibus

Cornū, n., horn. BASE, **corn-**

<i>Nom.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nua	ua
<i>Gen.</i> cor'nūs	ūs	cor'nuum	uum
<i>Dat.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nibus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nua	ua
<i>Abl.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nibus	ibus

Domus, f., house, home, sometimes has the endings of the second declension in the genitive, dative, and ablative singular, and in the genitive and accusative plural. Learn the declension of **domus**, § 568.

* Virgil. Literally: *Of which I was a large part.*

258.

VOCABULARY

cor'nū, -ūs, n., horn, wing (of an army).	dex'ter, -tra, trum, right, right-hand.
do'mus, -ūs, f., house, home.	sinis'ter, -tra, -trum, left-hand.
exer'citus, -ūs, m., army.	susti'neō, -ē're, -uī, -ten'tus, check, withstand.*
im'petus, -ūs, m., attack.	bene, adv., well.
ma'nus, -ūs, f., hand, band (of soldiers).	vēlō'citer, adv., swiftly.
occā'sus, ūs, m., setting.	inter, prep. with acc., between, among.
sōl, sō'lis, m., sun.	

259. What Latin words do the following suggest:

cornucopia manual solar domestic

RULES

260. Genitive of the Whole. — The genitive denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called the Genitive of the Whole.¹

Part of the soldiers. Pars militum.

The bravest of the men were in the army. Fortissimī virōrum in exercitū erant.

Note. — **Virōrum** denotes the whole of which **fortissimī** is a part. The ablative with **dē** or **ex** is sometimes used instead of the genitive of the whole, especially after cardinal numbers. *One of the boys. Ūnus ex puerīs. Ten of the horses were seen in the field. Decem ex equīs in agrō vidēbantur.*

EXERCISES

261. Translate, and parse all the verbs:

(a) 1. Fortissimus omnium Rōmānōrum erat Caesar. 2. Decem ex militibus quam fortissimī fuerant. 3. Multī Helvētiōrum vulnerātī erant. 4. Pars manūs ā dextrō cornū² vidēbātur. 5. Sōlis occāsū Caesar summō in colle castra posuit.

¹ Sometimes called the Partitive Genitive.

² On the right wing.

(b) 1. Domus Caesaris pulcherrima erat. 2. Imperātor sinistrō cornū exercitūs propior quam dextrō erat. 3. Militēs vėlōcissimē cucurrērunt et bellum bene gessērunt. 4. Impetūs dextrī cornūs facile sustinēbimus. 5. Multae et maximae arborēs inter domum et flūmen vidēbantur.

262. Translate:

(a) 1. We saw the houses of the enemy on the top of the hill. 2. Nothing could be equal to Caesar's armies. 3. Six of the attacks have been withstood very bravely. 4. War was waged long and fiercely in the territory of the Gauls. 5. Part of the bands of the enemy withstood the Roman army as well as possible.

(b) 1. At sunset the soldiers fought less easily. 2. Very many attacks of the enemy have been withstood by Caesar's forces. 3. Good laws are praised by the best citizens, but not by bad men. 4. The left wing of Caesar's army was not like the right (wing). 5. The soldiers on the left wing fought six hours longer than (those) on the right (wing).

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

263. Commit to memory with the translations:

1. Sōlis occāsū. 2. Ā dextrō cornū. 3. Ā sinistrō cornū. 4. Ab summō colle. 5. Ab superiōre parte.

LESSON XXXI

FIFTH DECLENSION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

*Carpe diem. — Seize the opportunity.**

264. The **fifth declension** consists of nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ēī**.¹ They are feminine, with a few exceptions.

265. **di'ēs**, m., *day*. BASE, **di-** **rēs**, f-, *thing*. BASE, **r-**

	SINGULAR	TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i> di'ēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Gen.</i> diē'ī	re'ī	ēī
<i>Dat.</i> diē'ī	re'ī	ēī
<i>Acc.</i> di'em	rem	em
<i>Abl.</i> di'ē	rē	ē
	PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i> di'ēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Gen.</i> diē'rum	rē'rum	ērum
<i>Dat.</i> diē'bus	rē'bus	ēbus
<i>Acc.</i> di'ēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Abl.</i> diē'bus	rē'bus	ēbus

266. **Rēs pūb'lica** and **iūs iūran'dum** are compound nouns.

(a) **Rēs pūblica** = **rēs** + fem. adj. **pūblica**, meaning the *public affair*; that is, the *state*. Both parts of the word are declined.

(b) **Iūs iūrandum** = **iūs** + neuter gerundive **iūrandum**. **Iūs** is a neuter noun of the third declension, and **iūrandum** is declined like the neuter of **magnus**. Both parts of the word are declined.

* Horace. Literally: *Grasp the day*.

¹ Genitive and dative singular end in **-ēī** when a vowel precedes, in **-ei** when a consonant precedes.

267.

VOCABULARY

a/ciēs, aciē'ī, f., line of battle.

amī'cus, -a -um, friendly.

inimī'cus, -a, -um, unfriendly.

inimī'cus, -ī, m., a personal enemy.

(Compare hostis, a public enemy.)

di'ēs, diē'ī, m., day.

iūs iūran'dum, iū'ris iūran'dī, n., oath.

iūs, iū'ris, n., right, law.

lo'cus, -ī, m. (pl., loca, n.), place, location.

rēs, re'ī, f., thing, affair.

rēs pū'blica, re'ī pū'blicae, f., state, republic.

pau'cī, -ae, -a, few.

ū'tilis, -e, useful.

inū'tilis, -e, useless.

268. What Latin words do the following suggest?

location

utility

republic

paucity

RULE

269. Dative with Adjectives. — Adjectives meaning *dear*, *faithful*, *friendly*, *suitable*, *useful*, and their opposites take the dative.

The place is suitable for a camp. **Locus castrīs idōneus est.**

The slaves are faithful to their masters. **Servī dominīs fidī sunt.**

EXERCISES

270. Translate, and compare the adjectives and adverbs:

(a) 1. Liberī mātī cārissimī erant. 2. Bonī cīvēs reī pūblicae fidī semper fuērunt. 3. Rōmānī locum idōneum castrīs vīdērunt. 4. Tēla militibus sunt ūtilissima. 5. Iūs iūrandum ducī ā militibus datum est.

(b) 1. Aestāte diēs noctibus longiōrēs sunt. 2. Paucī amīcōrum militum ad collem missī erunt. 3. Hostēs prīmam aciem fortiter oppugnābant. 4. Iūre bellī obsidēs victōrī dabuntur. 5. Locus castrīs idōneus fuit, sed aciēī inūtilis.

271. Translate:

(a) 1. Part of the army was unfriendly to the general. 2. A faithful son can be useful to his old father. 3. We are

friendly to our friends and faithful to our chief. 4. The hostages will be held by an oath. 5. A few places suitable for a line of battle have been seen.



The Central Court of a House in Pompeii.

(b) 1. The attack at sunset was useless. 2. At the lower part of the river (there) had been a bridge. 3. The day was a few hours longer than the night. 4. The house had been on the right bank of the river. 5. The line of battle was very long and had been seen on the top of the hill.

ORAL EXERCISES

272. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis rem pūblicam amāvit? 2. Quis cārus mātṛī est?
3. Esne magistrō amīcus? 4. Ubi est parva palūs? 5. Quid est in superiōre parte mūrī?

LESSON XXXII

FOURTH CONJUGATION

*Veni, vidi, vici. — I came, saw, conquered.**

273. Verbs of the **fourth conjugation** end in **-ire** in the present infinitive: **au'diō, audī're, audī'vī, audī'tus, hear.** The present stem is **audī-**, perfect stem **audīv-**, participial stem **audīt-**.

(a) Learn the indicative active of **audīō**, § 589, noting the peculiarity of the imperfect and the future.

274.

VOCABULARY

au'diō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, hear, <i>hear of.</i>	oc'tō, eight.
mū'niō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, fortify.	mul'tō di'ē, late in the day.
ve'niō, -ī're, vē'nī, ven'tus, come.	pos'terō di'ē, on the day follow- <i>ing.</i>
incrēdi'bilis, -e, incredible.	plūs pos'se, to be more powerful.

275. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

audience incredible convene octave

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

276. *Analyze each form:*

1. Audīs, audīvimus, audīverat, audiēmus. 2. Veniēbat, venit, vēnit, vēnerimus, veniunt. 3. Mūniēbāmus, mūnīvērunt, mūnīvī, mūniam. 4. Mittet, mūniet, dabit, laudāberis, vīsa est. 5. Potuerat, fuerat, vēnerat, dederat, mīserat.

* Caesar's famous message to the Roman Senate. Quoted by Suetonius.

277. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

1. We shall have heard, they will hear, we hear, I heard.
2. He comes, we shall come, they had come, you came.
3. They will fortify, he has fortified, I shall fortify.
4. We shall seize, we shall destroy, we shall send, we shall come.
5. They saw, we lead, he can, it had been stormed.

RULE

278. **Expressions of Place. Locative Case.** — With names of cities and towns, with **domus**, *home*, and with **rūs**, *country*, the preposition is not used in *expressions of place*.

These words express *place at which* by a case called the *Locative*. Its form is like the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions, otherwise like the ablative.

PLACE FROM WHICH

He comes $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{from the city, } \mathbf{ab\ urbe\ venit.} \\ \text{from Rome, } \mathbf{R\ddot{o}m\dd{a}\ venit.} \\ \text{from home, } \mathbf{dom\dd{o}\ venit.} \end{array} \right.$

PLACE TO WHICH

He runs $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to the city, } \mathbf{ad\ urbem\ currit.} \\ \text{to Rome, } \mathbf{R\ddot{o}mam\ currit.} \\ \text{home, } \mathbf{domum\ currit.} \end{array} \right.$

PLACE AT WHICH

He is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in the city, } \mathbf{in\ urbe\ est.} \\ \text{at Rome, } \mathbf{R\ddot{o}mae\ est.} \\ \text{at home, } \mathbf{dom\dd{i}\ est.} \end{array} \right.$

EXERCISES

279. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. Fēminae domī¹ erant. 2. Multō diē lēgātus Rōmam

¹ Locative.

vēnit. 3. Rēgēs plūs possunt quam cīvēs. 4. Līberī domum quam celerrimē vēnerant. 5. Posterō diē equitēs Rōmā in castra quam vėlōcissimē venient.

(b) 1. Bonī cīvēs rei pūblicae inimīcī nōn erunt. 2. Amīcus explōrātōris multās rēs audiet. 3. Octō ex oppidīs ā legiōnibus fortibus oppugnāta erant. 4. Nautae ex nāvibus vēnērunt sed in rīpā tēla reliquērunt. 5. Castra ex omnibus partibus¹ lātissimā fossā et altissimō mūrō mūnīvimus.

280. *Translate:*

(a) 1. On the next day we heard the signal at Rome. 2. The camp was fortified on all sides. 3. At sunset the children came home. 4. Cicero was very friendly to the republic. 5. The infantry came to Rome with incredible swiftness.

(b) 1. Courage is often more useful to a man than weapons. 2. The place was more suitable in all respects for a line of battle than for a camp. 3. Eight of the legions could not come to Rome in the early part of summer. 4. Late in the day Caesar led his forces back into camp. 5. The soldiers of the first legion carried on war less bravely than (those) of the tenth.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

281. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Domī. 2. Magnā cum celeritāte. 3. Multō diē. 4. Posterō diē. 5. Omnibus rēbus.

¹ On all sides.

LESSON XXXIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

Dum spiro, spero.— *While there is life there is hope.**

282. According to the rules in Lesson XV, conjugate **audiō** in the indicative passive. Compare § 589.

283. **Mille**, *thousand*, is an indeclinable adjective in the singular. In the plural it is a substantive declined like the plural of **mare**, and is followed by the genitive of the objects enumerated. *A thousand men*, **mille hominēs**, but *eight thousand men*, **mīlia hominum octō**.

(a) There is no single word in Latin for *mile*. A mile was one thousand paces, **mille passūs**. Plural, **mīlia passuum**. A Roman *pace* was the distance from where one foot touched the ground to where the same foot touched again, that is, two of our paces or about five feet.

284.

VOCABULARY

lātītū'dō, -inis, f., *width*.

longitū'dō, -inis, f., *length*.

mī'lia, **mī'lium**, n., *thousands*.

mī'le, adj., *thousand*.

pas'sus, -ūs, m., *pace*.

ma'neō, -ē're, **mān'sī**, **mān'sus**,
remain.

pa'teō, -ē're, -uī, —, *lie open*,
extend.

lon'gē, adv., *far*.

quam lon'gē, *how far?*

quam dī'ū, *how long?*

quīn'que, num. adj., indeclinable,
five.

285. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

latitude

millennium

remain

quintette

* Part of the motto of South Carolina. Literally: *While I breathe, I hope*.

RULE

286. Duration of Time. Extent of Space. — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

They came six miles. **Mīlia passuum sex vēnērunt.**

They fought five hours. **Quīnque hōrās pugnāvērunt.**

EXERCISES

287. Translate; parse all the nouns:

(a) 1. Quīnque diēs Rōmae mānsit. 2. Octō hōrās quam fortissimē pugnāverant. 3. Flūmen in lātitudinem mīlle passūs patuit. 4. Multōs annōs bellum gessērunt. 5. Equi mīlia passuum quīnque incrēdibilī celeritāte cucurrērunt.

(b) 1. Mūrum decem pedēs altum aedificābit. 2. Multae rēs ā prīncipe et ā paucīs mīlitum audiēbantur. 3. Aestāte ad urbem Rōmam veniētis. 4. Agrī Helvētiōrum in longitudinem mīlia passuum multa patēbant. 5. Multō diē victōriam Rōmānōrum audīvimus.

288. Translate:

(a) 1. We shall remain in the city eight days. 2. They ran a few miles and came home late in the day. 3. The bank of the river was ten feet high. 4. The territory of the Gauls extended many miles. 5. The attack was checked by a thousand soldiers on the left wing.

(b) 1. The line of battle will be many feet long. 2. At daybreak the general pitched camp at the top of the hill. 3. The tenth legion was faithful to Caesar in all respects. 4. The town had been fortified on all sides as carefully as possible. 5. The chief was faithful to the army, and he was loved by the brave soldiers.

ORAL EXERCISES

289. Answer these questions in Latin:

1. Quam diū domī manēbitis? 2. Quam longē oppidum patēbat? 3. Quam diū discipulī labōrant? 4. Ubi domus Caesaris erat? 5. Quis domī est?

LESSON XXXIV

ADJECTIVES OF PECULIAR DECLENSION

Audiatur et altera pars. — Let the other side be heard.

290. The following adjectives of the first and second declensions are regular in the plural, but have **-īus**¹ in the genitive and **-ī** in the dative singular of all genders :

a'lius, *other*.

al'ter, *the other* (of two).

ūl'lus, *any*.

nūl'lus, *no, none*.

u'ter, *which* (of two).

neu'ter, *neither* (of two).

sō'lus, *alone*.

tō'tus, *whole*.

ū'nus, *one*.

(a) Learn the declension of **alius**, **ūnus**, § 574 ; of **deus**, § 568.

291.

VOCABULARY

captī'vus, **-ī**, m., *captive*.

de'a, **-ae**, f., *goddess* (**-ābus** in dat. and abl. pl.).

de'us, **-ī**, m., *god*.

nūl'lus, **nūllī'us**, *no, none*.

ōr'dō, **ōr'dinis**, m., *rank, order*,
row.

vī'ta, **-ae**, f., *life*.

vin'cō, **-ere**, **vī'cī**, **vic'tus**, *conquer*.

vī'vō, **-ere**, **vī'xī**, **vīc'tus**,² *live*.

a'lius . . . **a'lius**, *one . . . another*.

a'liī . . . **a'liī**, *some . . . others*.

quot, indecl. adj., *how many*.

292. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

neuter

invincible

deity

alternate

* Seneca. Literally: *Also the other part*.

¹ **Alter** has **īus** in the genitive.

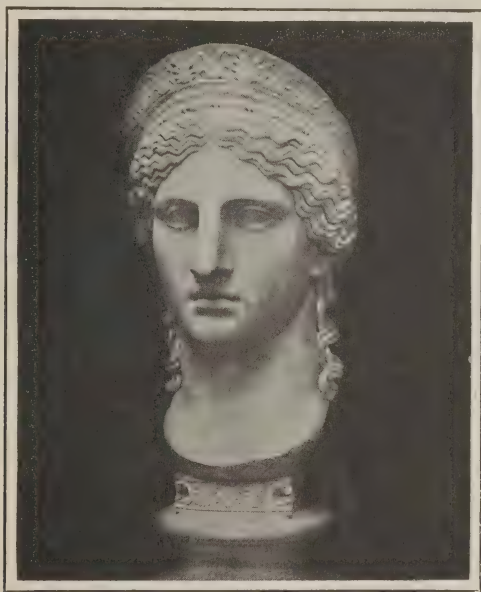
² Compare principal parts of **videō**, **vincō**, **vīvō**, **veniō**.

EXERCISES

293. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Deī simillimī deārum sunt. 2. Alia animālia in marī, alia in silvā vīvunt. 3. Soror neutriūs frātrum similis fuit. 4. Utra puellārum maior nātū est? 5. Deī ūnī ex hominibus longam vītā dedērunt.

(b) 1. Alia puella aliī fābulam nārrābit. 2. Tōtum diem



The Goddess Juno.

captivī quam optimē labōrāvērunt. 3. Nulliūs ōrātiōnēs quam Cicerōnis meliōrēs sunt. 4. Flūmen mīlia passuum quīnque patēbat. 5. Rōmānī ā nullīs hostibus victī sunt.

294. *Translate:*

(a) 1. One captive is a friend, another an enemy. 2. The father of neither boy was at home. 3. We shall tell the

story to Marcus only. 4. The faithful Romans were loved by the gods and goddesses. 5. The gods have given longer life to some than to others.

(b) 1. One friend is better than none. 2. The whole army had been conquered and the soldiers were living in fear every



The Way of the Tombs, in Pompeii.

day. 3. To which of the boys did the man give a beautiful gift? 4. The soldiers live in camp in the summer. 5. The centurions of the first rank remained all day in line of battle.

ORAL EXERCISE

295. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quot hōrās hominēs labōrābunt?
2. Quam longē vēnistī?
3. Quam diū vīxit?
4. Labōrābāsne tōtum diem?
5. Utra puella melior est?

LESSON XXXV

REVIEW

Vox populi vox dei. — The voice of the people is the voice of God.

296. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can, that seem to be derived from the following :

cornū	domus	manus	impetus
sōl	dexter	bene	deus
ūtilis	audiō	veniō	octō
mille	alter	sōlus	captīvus
ōrdō	vīta	vincō	vivō

297. Form Drill. — 1. Of what genders are the nouns of the first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions? Decline one noun of each declension. 2. In masculine and feminine nouns what is always the last letter in the accusative singular? the accusative plural? Give the terminations of these cases for each declension. 3. What are always the last two letters of the genitive plural? Give the terminations for each declension. 4. What cases are always alike in neuters? How do these cases always end in the plural? 5. What is peculiar about the declension of **domus**?

298. Syntax Drill. — 1. Write one Latin sentence illustrating the genitive of the whole, degree of difference, and ablative after a comparative. 2. What adjectives take the dative? 3. Give the different ways of expressing *place* in Latin. 4. How is duration of time expressed

in Latin? 5. What is a compound noun? Decline one. 6. How do verbs of the fourth conjugation differ from others in the imperfect indicative? 7. How does the future indicative of the third and fourth conjugations differ from that of the first and second? 8. Name the nine adjectives of peculiar declension.

299. Phrase Drill. — Give the following phrases in Latin:

1. How long? 2. The first part of the summer. 3. Long and fiercely. 4. Less easily. 5. As bravely as possible. 6. How far? 7. On the top of the hill. 8. On the left wing. 9. At home. 10. The next day. 11. At sunset. 12. Late in the day. 13. In all respects.

300. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Omnis impetus hostium a militibus sustinēbātur. 2. Nihil exercitibus Caesaris pār esse potuit. 3. Palūs erat nōn magna inter Caesaris atque hostium exercitūs. 4. Iter ad flūmen facillimum est. 5. Milītēs ad urbem incrēdibilī celeritāte current. 6. Oppidum altissimō mūrō mūniēmus. 7. Primā aestāte principēs Gallōrum domī in Galliā fuerant. 8. Sōlis occāsū nūntius audiēbātur. 9. Alia oppida mūnientur, alia dēlēbuntur. 10. Equī milia passuum quīnque cucurrērunt.

FORUM RŌMĀNUM

301. Forum Rōmānum erat inter Capitōlium et Palātium. Primō parvae tabernae utrimque erant. Post multōs annōs cōsulēs et imperātōrēs templa in Forō aedificāverunt.

In templum Concordiae senātōrēs conveniēbant. In rōstrīs Cicerō et aliī ōrātōrēs ad populum ōrātiōnēs habēbant. Undique altae columnae atque simulācra deōrum et statuāe virōrum erant.

Togātī Rōmānī in Forum saepe conveniēbant. Hinc Viā



The Forum in Ancient Rome.

Sacrā legiōnēs Rōmānae ad bellum ēdūcēbantur. Viā Sacrā legiōnēs victōrēs magnīs cum clāmōribus in Forum veniēbant. Nunc in Forō ruīnae undique videntur. Nihil manet nisi pauca vēstīgia antiq̄uae glōriae Rōmānōrum.



A Roman in the Toga.

LESSON XXXVI

INFINITIVES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

Vita sine litteris mors est. — Life without letters — books — is death.

302. The table below shows the **formation of infinitives** for all conjugations.

ACTIVE INFINITIVES

Present infinitive = *Present stem* + **-re** : portāre.

Perfect infinitive = *Perfect stem* + **-isse** : portāvisse.

Future infinitive = *Participial stem* + **-ūr** + *endings of*
magnus + **esse** : portātūrus esse.

PASSIVE INFINITIVES

Present infinitive = *Present stem* + **-rī** : portārī (except in the third conjugation, which makes its Present infinitive = *Present stem* with **e** changed to **ī** : dūcī).

Perfect infinitive = *Participial stem* + *endings of* **magnus** + **esse** : portātus esse.

Future infinitive = *Participial stem* + **-um** + **īrī** : portātum īrī.

(a) Following the above rules write all the infinitives of **dō**, **moneō**, **dūcō**, **audiō**, **sum**, **possum**. Compare §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 591.

303. Indirect Quotation. — The words or thoughts of a speaker may be stated directly or indirectly. A *direct quotation*, giving the exact words of the speaker, is stated thus: *He said, "The soldiers will fight."*

An *indirect quotation*, giving the thought but not the exact words of the speaker, is expressed thus: *He said that the soldiers would fight.*

In an indirect quotation in Latin the word *that* is not expressed and the statement is rendered by an infinitive with its subject in the accusative case: **Dixit milītēs pugnātūrōs esse.**

304. Tenses in Indirect Quotation. — Indirect quotation or *indirect discourse* occurs most frequently after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and the like.

(1) The *same* time as that of the principal verb is denoted by the *present* infinitive.¹

(2) Time *after* that of the principal verb is denoted by the *future* infinitive.

(3) Time *before* that of the principal verb is denoted by the *perfect* infinitive.²

(1) *He says that the soldiers are fighting.* **Dīcit milītēs pugnāre.**

(2) *He says that the soldiers have fought.* **Dīcit milītēs pugnāvisse.**

(3) *He says that the soldiers will fight.* **Dīcit milītēs pugnātūrōs esse.**

(1) *He said that the soldiers were being led.* **Dīxit milītēs dūcī.**

(2) *He said that the soldiers had been led.* **Dīxit milītēs ductōs esse.**

(3) *He said that the soldiers would be led.* **Dīxit milītēs ductum īrī.**

305.

VOCABULARY

mors, mor'tis, (-ium), f., death.

mūnī'tiō, -ō'nis, f., fortification.

intel'legō, intelle'gere, intel-

lē'xī, intellēc'tus, under-stand.

dī'cō, -ere, dī'xī. dic'tus, say.

pu'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, think, believe.

sci'ō, scī're, scī'vī, scī'tus, know.

¹ Compare § 693, c.

² Compare § 693, d.

306. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

mortal science diction intelligence

RULE

307. Accusative and Infinitive. — The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case.¹

I know that the boy will come. **Sciō puerum ventūrum esse.**

He thought that the children had remained. **Putāvit liberōs mānsisse.**

EXERCISES ON FORMS

308. *Translate; give the reason for the mood, tense, and ending of each infinitive:*

1. Scīvērunt legiōnem ventūram esse. 2. Dīxit hostēs victōs esse. 3. Dīcet librum missum esse. 4. Putō imperātōrem victum esse. 5. Sciō virum victūrum esse, victum irī, vincī. 6. Intellegunt Germānōs pugnāre. 7. Intellēxērunt Germānōs pugnāre.

309. *Translate:*

1. We think that the ambassador has been sent, is being sent.
2. I knew that the shout had been heard, would be heard, was being heard. 3. I understood that the children were writing, would write, had written. 4. They said that the goddesses had been loved, would be loved. 5. The Romans thought that the gods heard, would hear.

EXERCISES

310. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Putāmus aliōs fortēs fuisse, aliōs perīculum timuisse.
2. Intellēxit Gallōs sōlōs bellum nōn gestūrōs esse. 3. Dīcit exercitum Rōmānum in finēs Gallōrum dūcī posse. 4. Scīvī

¹ Compare § 715.

liberōs domum mittī. 5. Lēgātus obsidibus nūntiat neutrum diū vīvere posse.

(b) 1. Caesar cum tōtō exercitū brevissimō tempore mīlia passuum quīque venīre potuit. 2. Mūnitiō maxima erat. 3. Paucī hominēs timōre mortis vincuntur. 4. Rōmānī virtūte Gallōs superāvērunt. 5. Puer patris omnibus rēbus similis erat.

311. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Caesar knew that the Roman soldiers were not inferior. 2. He says that many things will often be heard at Rome. 3. All announced that the army was being led into one place. 4. We understood that Caesar was coming to the fortification at daybreak. 5. We heard that the women and children had been sent into the town.

(b) 1. Late in the day the camp was easily fortified. 2. He will announce that the soldiers have been seen on the top of the hill by the forces of the enemy. 3. The lieutenants thought that Caesar had enlisted five legions in hither Gaul. 4. The slaves fear death. 5. We understand that Caesar was the friend of the tenth legion.

ORAL EXERCISES

312. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid Caesar dīxit? 2. Scīvistīne Caesarem hostēs vīcisse? 3. Quam diū dux dīxit milītēs pugnātūrōs esse? 4. Cūr Rōmam vēnistī? 5. Quot cohortēs legiō habet?

LESSON XXXVII

DUO AND TRĒS

Facta non verba. — Deeds not words.

313. Learn the declension of **duo** and **trēs**, § 575.

314.

VOCABULARY

Bel'gae, -ā'rum, m., *Belgians.*

spēs, spe'ī, f., *hope.*

cōnfir'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus,

assert, strengthen, establish.

du'o, du'ae, du'o, adj., *two.*

trēs, trēs, tri'a, adj., *three.*

dīmit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus,
send in different directions, dis-
miss.

exīs'timō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus,
think, reckon.

un'dique, adv., *on all sides.*

315. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

dual

trinity

confirm

dismiss

RULE

316. **Ablative of Separation.** — Separation is expressed by the ablative either with or without a preposition.

The men are freed from danger. **Virī perīculō liberantur.**

You will free me from great fear. **Magnō mē metū liberābis.**

EXERCISES

317. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Homō timōre mortis liberārī potest. 2. Alium morte liberābō, alium perīculō. 3. Scīmus equum brevissimō tempore mīlia passuum duo currere potuisse. 4. Nāvēs hostium vėlōcissimē nāvīgāre nōn poterant. 5. Dux centuriōnibus nūntiābat Rōmānōs duo oppida paucīs diēbus¹ oppugnātūrōs esse.

¹ § 147.

(b) 1. Aliī magnās rēs scrībere possunt, aliī multum dicunt, sed nihil scrībunt. 2. Putāmus ducem dēfessōs militēs dīmīssūrum esse. 3. Prīncipēs cōfīrmāvērunt altōs montēs undique vidērī posse. 4. Belgae exīstimāvērunt spem victōriae maximam esse. 5. Caesar vīdit omnēs Belgās in ūnum locum vēnisse.

318. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The lieutenant was freed from all fear. 2. The Belgians knew that the soldiers could very easily come three miles in one hour. 3. The hope of neither of the two leaders was very great. 4. Caesar had enlisted two legions, and thought that the Germans could be conquered. 5. The centurion asserted that the auxiliary troops were not good soldiers.

(b) 1. Men are always very near to the gods. 2. The ships were detained for a few hours. 3. A private soldier of the first rank was very easily conquered. 4. They reckoned that a thousand men had been dismissed from the left wing of the army. 5. The messenger ran many miles as swiftly as possible and announced the danger to a centurion of the first rank.

ORAL EXERCISE

319. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Uter puer in agrō erat? 2. Vicēruntnē Gallōs aestāte? 3. Victōriaene ūnūs lēgātī multae sunt? 4. Num militēs ā dextrō cornū pugnābunt? 5. Ubi Caesar castra pōnet?

LESSON XXXVIII

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN -*iō*

*Populus vult decipi. — The people like to be deceived.**

320. A few verbs of the third conjugation end in *-iō*. They have the forms of the fourth conjugation wherever the fourth has *i* followed by a vowel.

(a) According to the above rule conjugate **capiō** in the indicative and infinitive, active and passive. Compare § 590.

321.

VOCABULARY

ca'piō , -ere, cē'pī , cap'tus , <i>take, seize, capture.</i>	cōnfī'ciō , -ere, -fē'cī , -fec'tus , ¹ <i>do thoroughly, accomplish.</i>
inci'piō , -ere, -cē'pī , -cep'tus , ¹ <i>begin, undertake.</i>	interfī'ciō , -ere, -fē'cī , -fec'tus , ¹ <i>kill.</i>
reci'piō , -ere, -cē'pī , -cep'tus , ¹ <i>take back, receive, (with sē) retreat.</i>	ia'ciō , -ere, iē'cī , iac'tus , <i>throw.</i>
fa'ciō , -ere, fē'cī , fac'tus , <i>make, do, (with iter) march.</i>	rei'ciō , -ere, -iē'cī , -iec'tus , ¹ <i>throw back, repulse.</i>
	dē , prep. with abl., <i>about, concerning, from.</i>

322. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

incipient reject reception factory

EXERCISES

323. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Dux militibus tēla capiēbat. 2. Multī et fortēs virī in bellō interfectī sunt. 3. Cōpiae Caesaris celeriter sē

* Attributed to Cardinal Carafa.

¹ Note the change in the present and participial stems when the simple verb is compounded.

recipient. 4. Militēs ē superiōre locō pīla iēcērunt. 5. Dextrum cornū exercitūs ad mūnitiōnem incredibili celeritāte iter facit.

(b) 1. Rēgis frāter et ūnus ē filiīs capientur. 2. Cōnfirmābāmus oppidum facile capī posse. 3. Dē deīs et deābus multa audīvimus. 4. Diēbus decem exercitus in urbem sē recēpit. 5. Rōmānī intellēxērunt Caesarem bellum incēpisse et cōfectūrum esse.

324. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The enemy marched all day. 2. We think that the forces will retreat late in the day. 3. The enemy will be repulsed in a few hours. 4. The Belgae had great hope concerning the battle but many were killed. 5. The general began the attack but was captured at daybreak.

(b) 1. The Germans were greater than the Romans in size. 2. Many very beautiful things had been made by hand. 3. The citizens thought that the cavalry could not be freed from the danger. 4. The Romans surpassed the Gauls in courage. 5. The leader had said that the legions would conquer.

ORAL EXERCISES

325. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid manibus facere potes? 2. Quot discipulī in prīmō ordine sunt? 3. Puellaene lapidēs bene iaciunt? 4. Nōne multī virī in proeliō interfectī sunt? 5. Liberīne amīcī amīcīs sunt?

LESSON XXXIX

NUMERALS

Post nubila Phoebus.—“*Every cloud has a silver lining.*”*

326. The following list contains the **numerals** up to *twenty*:¹

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ū'nus, ū'na, ū'num	pri'mus, <i>first</i> .
2. du'o, du'ae, du'o	secun'dus, <i>second</i> .
3. trēs, tri'a	ter'tius, <i>third</i> .
4. quat'tuor	quār'tus
5. quīn'que	quīn'tus
6. sex	sex'tus
7. sep'tem	sep'timus
8. oc'tō	octā'vus
9. no'vem	nō'nus
10. de'cem	de'cim
11. ūn'decim	ūnde'cim
12. duo'decim	duode'cim
13. tre'decim	ter'tius de'cim
14. quattuor'decim	quār'tus de'cim
15. quīn'decim	quīn'tus de'cim
16. sē'decim	sex'tus de'cim
17. septen'decim	sep'timus de'cim
18. duodēvigintī	duodēvicē'sim
19. ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicē'sim

* Literally: *After clouds, Phoebus* (the sun-god). Compare Longfellow's

“Be still, sad heart, and cease repining,
Behind the clouds is the sun still shining.”

¹ Compare § 676. For a more complete list of numerals, see § 579.

CARDINALS

20. vīgin'tī

21. vīgin'tī ū'nus (ūnus et
vīgin'tī)

30. trīgin'tā

ORDINALS

vīcē'simus

vīcē'simus prī'mus

trīcē'simus

(a) The declension of **ūnus**, **duo**, and **trēs** has been given. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, *one hundred*, inclusive, are indeclinable. The hundreds (except **centum**) are declined like the plural of **magnus**. The ordinals are declined like **magnus**.

327.

VOCABULARY

ag'men,¹ -minis, n., *army* (on the march), *line of march*; **no-vissimum agmen**, *rear*; **prī-mum agmen**, *van*.

cer'tus, -a, -um, *certain*; **cer'tiōrem** (or **certiōrēs**) *facere*, *inform*.²

quār'tus, -a, -um, *fourth*.

quīn'tus, -a, -um, *fifth*.

no'vus, -a, -um, *new*; no'vus mī'les, *recruit*.

sep'tem, num. adj., indecl., *seven*.

cen'tum, num. adj., indecl., *one hundred*.

me'dius, -a, -um, *middle*; mediā nocte, *at midnight*; mediō colle, *halfway up the hill*.

328. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

November quarter medium novelty

EXERCISES

329. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. Mediā nocte Caesaris castra oppugnābantur.
2. Quārtā hōrā diēi impetus in novissimum agmen factus est.
3. Scīvit nautās dē altitūdine flūminis certiōrēs factōs esse.
4. Novī mīlītēs mīlia passuum septem iter facient.
5. Caesar dē agmine certior factus erat.

- (b) 1. Prīmum agmen sē nōn recipiet sed impētum incipiet.
2. Dē victōriā nautārum Caesarem certiōrem fēcerant.
3. Quīntō annō bellī audiēbāmus urbem ā decimā legiōne capī.

¹ **aciēs**, *army* (in battle array); **exercitus**, *army* (a body of trained soldiers).

² Usually followed by **dē** with the ablative.

4. Novissimum agmen in mediō colle vīsum erat. 5. Tertiā hōrā proelī multī et magnī lapidēs dē mūrō ā fortibus militibus iaciēbantur.

330. Translate:

(a) 1. The recruits marched seven miles. 2. We have been informed about the death of the leader. 3. At sunset the rear will be attacked by the enemy. 4. We know that the four legions will come home. 5. Late in the day we understood that the whole army had been informed concerning the death of the general.



A Roman Altar.

(b) 1. They are building a wall one hundred feet long and eight feet high. 2. We heard that the lieutenant had lived six years in camp. 3. We assert that the soldiers on the left wing fought as bravely as possible, but were killed. 4. The father was faithful to his children and informed (them) concerning the danger. 5. At midnight we heard that the march had been accomplished very quickly.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

331. Commit to memory with the translations:

1. Iter facere. 2. Sē recipere. 3. Mediā nocte. 4. Mediō colle. 5. Certiōrem facere.

LESSON XL

PREPOSITIONS

Pro aris et focis.—*For home and fireside.**

332. The **ablative** is always used with

ā or **ab**, **dē**,
cum, **ex** or **ē**,
sine, **prō**, **prae**.

333. The **accusative** is used with about thirty prepositions; the most common are **ad**, **ante**, **apud**, **circum**, **contrā**, **inter**, **per**, **trāns**.

334. Two prepositions, **in** and **sub**, govern both **accusative** and **ablative**; with the accusative they denote motion *toward* a place, and with the ablative, rest *in* a place.

335.

VOCABULARY

adulēs/cēns, **-en'tis**, m., *youth, young man*.

adven'tus, **-ūs**, m., *arrival*.

iniū'ria, **-ae**, f., *injury, wrong*.

iu'gum, **-ī**, n., *yoke*.

stō, **stā're**, **ste'tī**, **stā'tus**, *stand*. { *instead of.*

prō, prep. (with abl.), *in front of, for*, { *in defense of.*

si'ne, prep. (with abl.), *without*. { *in behalf of.*

sub, { (with acc. after verbs of motion), *under*.

{ (with abl. to denote place), *at the foot of, under*.

* Literally: *For altars and hearths.*

336. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

adventure station injury adolescent

EXERCISES**337.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. Multī adulēscētēs prō patriā vīvunt. 2. Animālia pulchra sub arbore saepissimē stetērunt. 3. Cohortēs mīlia passuum tria Rōmā iter fēcērunt. 4. Multō diē lēgātī ad Caesarem vērērunt. 5. Adventū Caesaris primum agmen sub iugum missum erat.

(b) 1. Caesar dē adventū adulēscētis certior factus est. 2. Castra hostium sine periculō capī nōn possunt. 3. Posterō diē Caesaris equitēs cum Helvētiīs pugnāvērunt et victī sunt. 4. Equī equitum sub arboribus steterant. 5. Urbs diū et ācritē oppugnāta est sed capī nōn potuit.

338. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The enemy will kill a few of the youths. 2. At the arrival of the Belgians the leader stood in the van. 3. Fathers always work for their sons and daughters. 4. The man at the foot of the mountain received a very severe injury. 5. Some were sent under the yoke, others were taken as hostages.

(b) 1. We think that the letters have been sent to Rome. 2. The swift horseman had been informed of the danger by the voice of his leader. 3. In the summer the days are long and the nights very short. 4. Stones were hurled from the fortification by the bravest men. 5. We knew that the teacher would lead the children home.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR**339.** *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Sub monte. 2. Sub iugum. 3. Primum agmen. 4. Novissimum agmen. 5. Novī militēs.

LESSON XLI

REVIEW

*Nemo me impune lacessit. — No one molests me unhurt.**

340. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can, which seem to be derived from the following:

adventus	iaciō	capiō	medius
stō	iniūria	mors	ūnus
centum	certus	dīcō	faciō
duo	quārtus	incipiō	novus

341. Form Drill. — 1. Give the rules for the formation of active infinitives. Of passive infinitives. 2. Give the infinitives, active and passive, of **dō**, **moveō**, **mittō**, **capiō**, **veniō**. 3. Which infinitive of the third conjugation is peculiar in its form? 4. How are **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation conjugated? 5. How can you tell whether an **-iō** verb is of the third or of the fourth conjugation? 6. Count to **trīgintā** in Latin. 7. Decline **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, **deus**, **dea**, **alius**.

342. Word Drill. — 1. Distinguish between the meanings of **exercitus**, **agmen**, and **aciēs**. 2. Give the nominative, the genitive, and the gender of the Latin words for the following:

death	yoke	youth	arrival
fortification	injury	width ✓	length
goddess	god	hope	line of march

* The motto of Scotland, referring to the thistle.

343. Syntax Drill. — 1. Name two uses for the infinitive and illustrate each by a Latin sentence. 2. Name the prepositions that always govern the ablative case. 3. Name three prepositions that govern the accusative case. 4. What two prepositions govern both accusative and ablative? 5. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of separation. 6. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of specification.

344. Composition. — State in Latin ten facts that you have heard to-day. (Have the class translate each fact as stated.)

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

345. 1. Gladiūs in hostēs impetum incipiēmus. 2. Scripsistī pulchrās rēs ā liberis factās esse. 3. Tōtam noctem exercitus iter fēcit. 4. Existimāvit duodecim annōs bellum gestum esse. 5. Caesar novōs militēs in novissimō agmine posuit. 6. Mille virī Rōmā missī erant. 7. Adventus Rōmānōrum ab Helvētiīs audiēbātur. 8. Putāvimus militēs mediā nocte in oppidum mittī. 9. Longās litterās comitibus scribunt. 10. Vēnerunt Rōmam difficilī viā.

TARPĒIA

346. Sabīnī cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant et agrōs Rōmānōrum vāstābant. Rōmam exercitum dūcēbant et urbem intrāverunt sed Capitōlium capere nōn poterant. Ubi ab Capitōliō nōn longē aberant, puellam Tarpēiam, filiam ducis Rōmānī, portantem (*carrying*) aquam extrā moenia vīderunt.

Dux Sabinōrum putāvit puellam in Capitōlium exercitum dūcere posse, et dixit sē (*he*) Tarpēiae praeium datūrum esse. Puella dixit sē (*she*) habitūram esse rēs quās (*which*) in sinistrīs manibus gererent.

Sabīnī aureōs ānulōs et armillās in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant. Brevī tempore Sabīnī in Capitōliō stant et Tarpēiae praemium dare parant. In puellam scūta iaciunt; nam scūta Sabīnōrum erant in sinistrīs manibus. Tarpēia interficitur; Sabīnī Capitōlium occupant.



The Tarpeian Rock at Rome.

LESSON XLII

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

*Absit omen!—May there be no ill omen.**

347. Present Subjunctive. — *First conjugation = present stem* (with *ā* changed to *e*) + *personal endings*: **portem**, passive, **porter**.

(a) Learn the present subjunctive of **portō**, active and passive, and of **sum** and **possum**.¹ No translation is given for the subjunctive in the paradigms, as the meaning of a subjunctive varies with its use.

348. Volitive in Independent Sentences. — The subjunctive may be used in independent sentences to express something as *willed*. It is then called the *volitive* subjunctive and derives its name from **volō**, *I will*. The negative used with it is **nē**. There are many varieties of it. For example, it is used in *exhortations* or *commands* in the first and third persons.

Let us be good. **Bonī sīmus.**

Let them not fight. **Nē pugnent.**

EXERCISES

349. Translate:

(a) 1. **Nē in palūde stēmus.** 2. **Caesar dux² sit tōtam vītā.** 3. **Nē vulnerēmur.** 4. **Quam fortissimī sīmus.** 5. **Summum montem occupēmus.**

(b) 1. **Māter dē periculō liberōrum certior facta erat.** 2. **Audivistī magnum oppidum mūrō et fossā celeriter mūnī-**

* Literally: *May the omen be absent!* Just as we say: *Knocking on wood!*

¹ See § 586 and § 591.

² See § 28.

- tum esse. 3. Scīmus domum dominī pulcherrimam fuisse.
4. Sinistrum cornū quam dextrum minus facile vincētur.
5. Quīnque dē mīlitibus sub iugum missī erant et interfectī sunt.



Augustus Caesar.

350. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Let us build very large ships. 2. Let part of the youths stand halfway up the hill without fear. 3. Let us be faithful to our friends. 4. Let us fight long and well for our king and our country. 5. Let the weary youths be praised for their great bravery.

(b) 1. We think the hostage ought to be given to the conqueror. 2. A mountain is many feet higher than a hill. 3. At the arrival of the recruits the weary soldiers are freed from danger. 4. We knew that Caesar's forces would capture the bands of the enemy. 5. Under a large tree halfway up the hill part of the soldiers could be seen.

ORAL EXERCISE**351. *Answer these questions in Latin:***

1. Estne superior pars mūrī nigra? 2. Suntne sex puerī in secundō ōrdine? 3. Estne pāx cārīor hominibus quam bellum? 4. Nārrābisne magistrō fābulam dē Caesare? 5. Labōrābisne prō mātrem et patrem?

LESSON XLIII

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

*Crescat scientia. — May knowledge increase!**

352. *The present subjunctive of the second and fourth conjugations = present stem + a + personal endings, mone-a m, audi a m.*

The present subjunctive of the third conjugation = present stem (with e changed to a) + personal endings, dūca m.

(a) Learn the present subjunctive, active, and passive of **moneō**, **dūcō**, **audiō**, and **capiō**, §§ 587, 588, 589, 590.

353. Subjunctive of Purpose. — In English, purpose is often expressed by the infinitive, *We fight to conquer*. But in Latin prose purpose is expressed *not* by the infinitive but *by the subjunctive*. It is introduced by **ut**, *that*, *in order that*, if the purpose is positive, by **nē**, *that not*, *lest*, if it is negative.

We fight to overcome. **Pugnāmus ut superēmus.**

We fight that we may not be overcome. **Pugnāmus nē superēmur.**

354.

VOCABULARY

le'gō, -ere, lē'gī, lēc'tus, read,	ut, conj., that.
choose.	nē, conj., that not, lest.
dē'ligō, ¹ -ere, -lēgī, -lēc'tus,	per, prep. (with acc.), through.
choose from, gather, select.	rēg'num, -ī, n., royal power, king-
prohi'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, keep	dom.
off, hinder.	crē'ber, -bra, -brum, frequent.

* The motto of Chicago University.

¹ Compare with legō.

355. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

interregnum prohibit itinerary submarine

EXERCISES

356. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Pugnāmus fortiter ut ā duce laudēmur. 2. Nūntiōs mittit ut itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 3. Milītēs celerimē currunt nē hostēs novissimum agmen videant. 4. Vir



The Roman Forum To-day.

Compare this with the picture facing page 106.

mittētur ut rēgnum in cīvitāte occupet. 5. Veniēmus celeriter, ut dē periculō adulēscēntem certiōrem faciāmus.

(b) 1. Cohortēs Rōmānae pugnant nē in viā vincantur. 2. Cīvitātibus quam plūrimīs Caesarem amicum esse dīxit. 3. Caesar memoriā tenet obsidēs multōs receptōs esse.

4. Dicit imperatorem posse iter nulli¹ per provinciam dare.
5. Crebri nuntii de adventu copiarum ad Caesarem missi erant.

357. Translate:

(a) 1. We come to make peace. 2. Let us march through the territory of the Gauls. 3. The enemy comes to seize the royal power at Rome. 4. Let us send back the soldiers to pitch camp late in the day. 5. The children read many books that they may understand all things about Rome and the Roman people.

(b) 1. Caesar said that the Roman people would make peace with the Gauls. 2. A man is selected to warn the captive. 3. We shall seize the top of the mountain very easily. 4. All think that Marcus will kill the young man. 5. Let the faithful father advise his son more often.

ORAL EXERCISES

358. Answer these questions in Latin:

1. Dixistine puerum cum diligentia laboravisse? 2. Scribitisne libenter litteras? 3. Quid dicis? 4. Venisne ut matrem videas? 5. Nonne Caesar cum Gallis saepe pugnavit?

¹ See § 56.

LESSON XLIV

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

*Caveat emptor. — Let the buyer beware.**

359. Imperfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = *present stem + re + personal endings; or present infinitive + personal endings.*

Perfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = *perfect stem + erī + personal endings.*

Pluperfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = *perfect stem + isse + personal endings; or perfect infinitive + personal endings.*

360. According to above rules conjugate the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect subjunctive active of **portō**, **moneō**, **dūcō**, **audiō**, **capiō**, also **sum** and **possum**. Conjugate all but **sum** and **possum** in the passive, following the same general plan as that used in the passive indicative. Compare §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591.

361.

VOCABULARY

impe'rium, **impe'rī**, n., *command, control, military authority.*

senā'tor, **-ō'ris**, m., *senator.*

persuā'deō, **-ē're**, **persuā'sī**, **persuā'sus**, *persuade*, governs the dative followed by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive.

ne'gō, **-ā're**, **-ā'vī**, **-ā'tus**, *deny, say not.*

im'perō, **-ā're**, **-ā'vī**, **-ā'tus**, *order, levy.* It governs the dative, and is followed by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive.

* We say: *Buyer's risk.*

362. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

imperative legible negative senatorial

RULES

363. **Classes of Tenses.** — Tenses are divided into two classes, *principal* and *historical*.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Principal Tenses</i>	{ Present	{ Present
	{ Future	
	{ Future perfect	{ Perfect
<i>Historical Tenses</i>	{ Imperfect	{ Imperfect
	{ Perfect	
	{ Pluperfect	

364. **Sequence of Tenses.**¹ — Generally speaking, principal tenses in the indicative are followed by principal tenses in the subjunctive, and historical tenses by historical tenses.

The present and imperfect subjunctive are used to denote action incomplete at the time of the main verb, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive denote action complete at the time of the main verb.

EXERCISES ON SUBJUNCTIVES

365. 1. Venīmus ut videāmus. 2. Persuādent virīs ut pugnent, capiant, moneant. 3. Persuādēbat senātōrī nē pugnāret, caperet, monēret. 4. Militem mittet ut currat, videat, laudet. 5. Lēgātōs mīsit ut monērent, persuādērent, vincerent.

366. 1. We come to attack, to conquer. 2. We came to attack, to conquer. 3. We persuaded the soldiers not to give, attack, kill. 4. The man is sent to hear, know, fight. 5. Caesar persuades the lieutenant to think, to say, to know.

¹ Notice that the first part of this rule shows whether to use a *principal* or *historical* tense; the second part shows *which one* of the principal or historical tenses to use.

EXERCISES

367. *Translate: explain the mood and tense of each subjunctive and infinitive:*

(a) 1. Trēs senātōrēs dēlēctī erant. 2. Veniam ut dē bellō amīcum certiōrem faciam. 3. Nē fēminās et liberōs interficiāmus. 4. Fortissimē pugnāvērunt ut ā duce laudārentur. 5. Imperātor lēgātō persuāsīt ut in citeriōre Galliā novōs mīlitēs cōscriberet.

(b) 1. Multās rēs dē imperiō Rōmānōrum lēgit. 2. Lēgātō imperāverāmus ut viā hostēs prohiberet. 3. Negāvērunt equitēs quam peditēs fortius pugnāvisse. 4. Dicit Germānōs bellum cum Gallīs plūrimōs annōs gestūrōs esse. 5. Scīvimus puerum decem annīs¹ maiōrem nātū esse quam puellam.

368. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Five legions were levied in hither Gaul. 2. Let us not kill the consul. 3. We ordered the senators to send hostages and make peace. 4. We shall send the boy home to read the book. 5. We send the lieutenant to persuade the soldiers not to leave the camp.

(b) 1. We have been informed that the soldiers were able to withstand all the attacks of the Germans. 2. The messenger informed Caesar of the victory. 3. The leader denied that the rear was being conquered. 4. Let us fight long and fiercely to conquer the enemies of Rome. 5. The Helvetians said that their fields had been laid waste.

ORAL EXERCISE

369. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr vēnerat? 2. Quam diū lēgistī? 3. Quis discipulis persuāsīt ut legerent? 4. Cūr nūntium mīsistī? 5. Mittēbārisne ut pugnārēs?

¹ See § 247.

LESSON XLV

DEPONENT VERBS

Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.—Sweet and seemly it is to die for one's country.

370. A **deponent**¹ verb has passive forms with active meanings. These verbs are found in each of the four regular conjugations and are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive: -ārī, -ērī, -ī, -īrī.

(a) A deponent verb has a few *active forms*; the future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, and supines. The gerundive always has *passive meanings*; the perfect passive participle, sometimes.

371.

VOCABULARY

cō'nor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, (with infin.) try, attempt.	potior, -ī'rī, -ī'tus sum, get possession of.
fru'or, fru'ī, frūc'tus sum, enjoy.	profici'scor, profici'scī, profec'tus sum, set out.
mo'ror, ² -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, delay.	se'quor, se'quī, secū'tus sum, follow.
pa'tior, pa'tī, pas'sus sum, (with infin.) suffer, permit, allow.	ū'tor, ū'tī, ū'sus sum, use.
polli'ceor, -ē'rī, -itus sum, (with fut. infin.) promise.	ve'reor, -ē'rī, -itus sum, fear, be afraid.

372. What Latin words do the following suggest?

patient sequel use revere

EXERCISES ON FORMS

373. Translate:

1. Verēbimur, potiēmur, ūtiminī, ūtāmur, pollicēberis.
2. Sequeris, sequēris, verētur, cōnētur, potiētur.
3. Patiē-

¹ Deponent verbs are so named because they *lay aside* the active forms.

² Do not confuse this with *morior*, *morī*, *mortuus sum*, *to die*.

bar, morātus est, potirī, sequī, proficiscāmur. 4. Proficiscar, proficiscētur, ūtitur, ūtī, fruī. 5. Fructus sum, veritus eram, patiēbātur, morer.

374. *Translate:*

1. To fear, he will have set out, I shall use, let us promise.
2. He was getting possession of, they will follow, I use.
3. We shall follow, they had enjoyed, you were trying. 4. To follow, let us set out, he will follow, I shall permit. 5. They will use, to delay, let them allow, we had read.

RULE

375. Deponents with the Ablative. — The verbs **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vescor**, and their compounds, regularly govern the ablative case.

We enjoy good books. Bonīs librīs fruimur.
The soldier uses a sword. Miles gladiō ūtitur.

EXERCISES

376. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. Cōnābimur castrīs potirī. 2. Gladiīs optimē ūteris.
 3. Multī virī frūmentō vīvunt. 4. Imperātor pollicitus est peditēs victōriā fructūrōs esse. 5. Putant trēs virōs tōtius Galliae imperiō potirī posse.

- (b) 1. Proficiscentur ut senātōrēs videant. 2. Equitēs mīlia passuum multa hostēs secūtī sunt. 3. Senātōrēs impetūs hostium vereantur. 4. Nē morēmur in urbe tōtam noctem.
 5. Pater adulēscētī imperāvit ut liberōs librōs bonōs legere paterētur.

377. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. All had set out at daybreak. 2. We shall follow the enemy many miles. 3. The Romans used very many

recruits. 4. We tried to keep the enemy from the march.
5. Many women enjoy beautiful pictures.

(b) 1. Caesar got possession of the larger part of the enemy's horses. 2. We promised that the ambassador would be at Rome late in the day. 3. Let us delay at Rome as long as



The Arch of Constantine at Rome.

possible. 4. The senator persuaded the general to allow the army to follow the enemy. 5. Let the commander-in-chief get possession of the royal power of all Gaul.

ORAL EXERCISE

378. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr tēlō ūtēbāris? 2. Quid verēberis? 3. Quam diū morātī sunt? 4. Cūr proficiscēmur? 5. Pollicēbāturne lēgātum ducem secūtūrum esse?

LESSON XLVI

SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

Verbum sat sapienti.—*A word to the wise is sufficient.**

379. **Result** is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut**. *Negative result* is introduced by **ut nōn**. The main clause often contains **tantus**, *so great*, **sīc**, **ita**, **tam**, *so*, or some word of similar meaning. The rule for sequence of tenses, § 364, must be followed.

The boy was so good that he was loved. **Puer tam bonus erat ut amārētur.**

Caesar's courage was such that he could not be conquered. **Virtus Caesaris tanta erat ut vincī nōn posset.**

380.

VOCABULARY

Brū'tus, -ī, m., *Brutus*.

cūs'tōs, -ō'dis, m., *guard, watch, keeper*.

impedīmen'tum, -ī, n., *hindrance*; pl., *heavy baggage*.

suspī'ciō, -ō'nis, f., *suspicion*.

fu'giō, -ere, **fū'gī**, —, *flee*.

an'te, prep., (with acc.) *before*.

an'te, adv., *before, ago*.

pau'lō, adv., (used as a degree of diff.) *by a little, a little*.

pau'lum, adv., *a little, somewhat*.

tan'tus, -a, -um, *so great, such*.

ita, adv., *so (manner)*.

tam, adv., *so (degree)*.

plū'rimum posse, *to be most powerful, to have great influence*.

381. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

custodian

fugitive

impediment

suspicious

*This is often abbreviated: **verb. sat** and **verb. sap.**

RULES

382. Adverbial Accusative. — The accusative is often used adverbially to express degree or extent.

He is very powerful. **Plūrimum potest.**

The teacher praised the girl much. **Magister puellam multum laudāvit.**

383. Adverbial Ablative. — The ablative is often used adverbially, usually to express degree of difference.¹

A little before. **Paulō ante.**

He is much braver. **Multō fortior est.**

EXERCISES

384. *Translate; give the reason for the mood and tense of each verb:*

(a) 1. Paulō ante domī eram. 2. Rēgēs plūrimum poterant. 3. Ante sōlis occāsum paulum legāmus. 4. Nihil tam malum est ut peius esse nōn possit. 5. Tēlis ita ūsī sunt ut ūnum ex hostibus interficerent.

(b) 1. Bene pugnāre cōnātur ut ā duce bonō laudētur. 2. Suspīciōne servum liberāvimus ut vitā fruerētur. 3. Brūtō nūntiāre cōnēmur impedīmenta hostium capta esse. 4. Tantus timor mortis omnēs cūstōdēs occupāvit ut tēlis nōn ūterentur. 5. Lēgātī ita verēbantur ut exercitum relinquerent et fugerent.

385. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The bravest are the most powerful. 2. Did you know that the enemy had fled a little while ago? 3. The bravery of the Romans was so great that they could not be conquered. 4. The boy read so that no one could understand (him). 5. The guard saw such danger that he did not allow the women to leave the town.

¹ Compare § 247.

(b) 1. The soldiers fought so bravely that they easily conquered the forces of the Helvetians. 2. They denied that the right wing of the army had fled from the top of the hill. 3. The citizens tried to flee from the fire. 4. They used the



The Forum at Pompeii.
With Vesuvius in the distance.

swords so well that they killed many of the enemy. 5. The leader promised that the cohorts would not delay, but would take possession of the enemy's heavy baggage.

ORAL EXERCISE

386. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Estne puer tam bonus ut ab omnibus amētur? 2. Num Caesar impedimentis potiēbātur? 3. Nōne Caesar apud (among) Rōmānōs plūrimum potuit? 4. Fugiēbatne Rōmā suspiciōne? 5. Quam longē exercitum sequēris?

LESSON XLVII

REVIEW

*Non est vivere sed valere vita. — Not merely to exist, but to amount to something is life.**

387. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

persuādeō	prohibeō	rēgnum	imperium
senātor	legō	negō	patior
potior	sequor	ūtor	cūstōs
suspīciō	fugiō	dēligō	tantus

388. Form Drill. — 1. Give the formula for making each subjunctive tense, active and passive, in each of the four regular conjugations. 2. Name the *principal* tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive. 3. Name the *historical* tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive. 4. Imperātor tam celeriter venit ut hostēs impedimentis potīrī nōn possint. Change **venit** to **vēnit** and complete the sentence. 5. Conjugate **possum** and **capiō** through the subjunctive.

389. Syntax Drill. — 1. Define the *volitive* subjunctive. Give two examples in Latin. 2. Give the rule for the sequence of tenses. 3. How do we express purpose? result? 4. How is negative purpose introduced? negative result? 5. Complete this English sentence to ex-

* Martial.

press a purpose: *He used weapons*. When the sentence is written in Latin, with what word will the clause be introduced? What tense must be used and why? 6. What case and mode follow *imperō*? 7. Define a deponent verb. 8. What verbs govern the ablative case?

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

390. 1. Rēs publica ab omnibus bonīs cīvibus laudētur. 2. Manibus puer parvus multās et pulchrās rēs fēcīt. 3. Tertiae legiōnī imperant, nē novissimum agmen hostium oppugnet. 4. Scīmus Germānōs Gallōs vīribus superāvisse. 5. Helvētīi milia passuum centum iter fēcērunt. 6. Milites multōs diēs circum oppidum morābuntur. 7. Posterō diē cōpiae urbem reliquērunt et ad oppidum vērunt. 8. Liber tam gravis erat ut ā puerō parvō portārī nōn posset. 9. Aliī hominēs erant tam malī ut ā nullō amārentur. 10. Sequāmur adulēcentem ad mare.

NĀSĪCA ET ENNIUS

391. Nāsīca Ennī poētae amīcus erat. Nāsīca ad Ennium vēnit et ā portā eum quaesīvit. Serva dixit, "Ennius domī nōn est." Ennius domī erat et Nāsīca id (*it*) sciēbat, nihil tamen dīxit, sed domum revertit.

Paucīs post diēbus ad Nāsīcam vēnit Ennius. Huic (*to him*) ipse Nāsīca dīxit, "Nōn sum domī." Tum Ennius dīxit, "Nōne cognōscō vōcem tuam?" Nāsīca respondit, "Homō es impudens; ego servae tuae crēdidī: tū nōn crēdis mihi."

LESSON XLVIII

RELATIVE PRONOUN

Qui non proficit, deficit. — Who does not advance, falls behind.

392. The relative pronoun¹ is declined as follows :

quī, who, which, that

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.		FEM.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	
<i>Gen.</i>	cu'ius	cu'ius	cu'ius	quō'rum	quā'rum	quō'rum	
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus	
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus	

393.

VOCABULARY

fu'ga, -ae, f., flight.

profec'tiō, -ō'nis, f., departure.

tū'tus, -a, -um, safe.

quī, quae, quod, relative pronoun, who, which, that.

ibi, adv., there.

in'colō, -ere, -uī (intrans.),² live, dwell; (trans.) inhabit.

po'pulo, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, lay waste, devastate.

vi'deor, -ē'rī, vī'sus sum, seem, appear.

394. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

depopulate

suspicion

scribe

transpose

RULE

395. **Agreement of the Relative.** — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.

I saw the man who came. Virum quī vēnit vīdī.

The city which you see is Rome. Urbs quam vidēs Rōma est.

¹ See §§ 659 and 661.

² See §§ 680 and 681.

(a) Notice that **quī** in the first example is masculine gender, singular number, third person, like its antecedent **virum**, but it is *nominative* case because it is the subject of the verb **vēnit**. In the second example the pronoun **quam** is feminine gender, singular number, third person, to agree with its antecedent **urbs**, but *accusative* because it is the object of the verb **vidēs**.

EXERCISES

396. *Translate; give the reason for the gender, number, and case of each relative pronoun:*

(a) 1. Loca ad quae properāvimus tūta erant. 2. Vidērunt cūstōdem cuius amīcus ex urbe missus erat. 3. Cūstōs cui perīculum nūntiātum erat verērī vīsus est. 4. Pater virī dē quō dīxit multōs annōs Rōmae incoluit. 5. Profectiō fugae simillima vidētur.

(b) 1. Ad amīcum litterās, quās scrīpsī, mīsī. 2. Ad flūmen quod est in extrēmīs hostium finibus properāvit atque ibi castra posuit. 3. Milītēs missī sunt quī¹ finēs Gallōrum populārentur. 4. Milītēs ā quibus castra mūnīta sunt ad urbem venient. 5. Caesar per nūntiōs certior factus est trēs partēs cōpiārum trāns flūmen fuisse, quārtam partem in castrīs relīctam esse.

397. *Translate:*

(a) 1. I heard that Caesar had come, had seen, had conquered. 2. We saw the men by whom the heavy baggage had been captured. 3. The boy whom I see is much better than his sister. 4. I saw the slave to whom the master had given very many gifts. 5. The city was not safe on account of the flight of the army.

(b) 1. Let us delay the departure of the enemy many days. 2. The Romans so laid waste the territory of their enemies that nothing was left. 3. They tried to make peace with Caesar in order that their fields might not be destroyed and

¹ **Quī** is often equivalent to *ut* and a personal pronoun.

their children killed. 4. They say that brave men are often very powerful and have gained possession of many large cities. 5. I heard the things about which Caesar had been informed by his lieutenant.

ORAL EXERCISE

398. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Fuitne Caesaris profectiō similis fugae? 2. Esne puer quem Rōmae vīdī? 3. Ubi legiōnēs Rōmānae erant? 4. Quibus fābulam nārrāvistī? 5. Vīdistīne impedīmenta quibus imperātor potītus est?



The Ruins of Trajan's Villa near Rome.

LESSON XLIX

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

*Quis custodiet ipsos custodes? — Who shall watch the watchmen themselves?**

399. The **interrogative pronouns**¹ are the substantive, **quis**, *who?* and the adjective **quī**, *what?*

Quis, who?

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cu'ius	cu'ius	quō'rum	quā'rum	quō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus

(a) The interrogative adjective **quī** is declined like the relative pronoun **quī**, § 392.

400.

VOCABULARY

quis, **quid**, interrogative pronoun, *who*, *what?*

quī, **quae**, **quod**, interrogative adjective, *what?*

Rho'danus, **-ī**, m., *Rhone*.

num, interrogative particle, *whether*, when used in indirect questions.

dīc, (imperative) *tell*.

quamo'brem, adv., *why*.

et . . . et, *both . . . and*.

quae'rō, **-ere**, **quaesī'vī**, **quaesī-tus**, *ask*, *seek*. It takes the acc. of the thing and the abl. of the person with **ē**, **ex**, **ā**, **ab**, or **dē**.

401. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

question	dictate	benediction	intervene
----------	---------	-------------	-----------

* Juvenal.

¹ Compare § 662.

RULE

402. Indirect Questions. — An indirect question follows a verb of knowing, asking, and the like, and is a subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word.¹ It is expressed by the subjunctive.

DIRECT QUESTION

Where were they?

Ubi erant?

Where are you?

Ubi es?

INDIRECT QUESTION

He heard where they were.

Audīvit ubi essent.

He knows where you are.

Scit ubi sīs.

EXERCISES

403. Translate:²

(a) 1. Sciō quis veniat, quis vēnerit. 2. Scīvit quis venīret, quis vēnisset. 3. Quaesīvit cui liber datus esset. 4. Dic Caesarī cūr paulō fortius nōn pugnāverīs. 5. Audīvi quot hominēs Galliam incolerent.

(b) 1. Quid fēcerat? 2. Quaesīvit ā Gallīs quamobrem Rōmam vēnissent. 3. Quī militēs tam bene pugnābunt ut hostium fīnēs populentur? 4. Quaerēbat num Gallī trāns Rhodanum incolerent. 5. Multō diē Caesarī per explōrātōrēs nūntiātum est et montem ā militibus Rōmānīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.

404. Translate:

(a) 1. We do not know who inhabited the cities of Gaul. 2. My friends asked why I had not remained there. 3. We asked Caesar how many men had been killed. 4. Do you know by whom the Gauls were conquered? 5. Did you know that the enemy had fled a little while ago?

(b) 1. Let us ask about the children who³ are delaying in

¹ Compare §§ 662 and 705.

² Review the subjunctive forms of each conjugation.

³ The student must decide whether *who* and *whom* are relative or interrogative pronouns, for on this fact depends the mood of the following verb.

the city but who ought to set out toward home. 2. So great was the fear of the soldiers that they fled and left the heavy baggage. 3. Tell your father why you were a little afraid (feared a little). 4. The lieutenants ordered (their) infantry



A Roman Sword.

to use (their) swords as quickly as possible. 5. Before the departure of the guards the young men seemed to be safe.

ORAL EXERCISE

405. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis scīvit cūr victus essēs? 2. Quibus tēlīs mīlītēs ūtentur? 3. Quem Rōmae vīdistī? 4. Scīsne quō in locō sīs?



A Roman Sword in its Sheath.

LESSON I

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

*Veritas vos liberabit. — The truth shall make you free.**

406. The **personal pronouns**¹ are **ego** for the first person and **tū** for the second. The personal pronoun of the third person is supplied by the demonstrative **is**.

FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> e'go, I.	nōs, we.	tū, you.	vōs, you.
<i>Gen.</i> me'ī	{ no'strum { no'strī	tu'ī	{ ves'trum { ves'trī
<i>Dat.</i> mi'hi	nō'bīs	ti'bi	vō'bīs
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs	tē	vōs
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nō'bīs	tē	vō'bīs

407. The **reflexive pronouns**² refer to the subject of the sentence or of the clause in which they stand. They are declined like the personal pronoun of the same person except that they have no nominative; **meī**, *of myself*, **tuī**, *of yourself*, and so on.

Reflexive of the Third Person

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Gen.</i> su'ī	su'ī
<i>Dat.</i> si'bi	si'bi
<i>Acc.</i> sē or sē'sē	sē or sē'sē
<i>Abl.</i> sē or sē'sē	sē or sē'sē

(a) The reflexive of the third person serves for all genders and for both numbers. Thus, **suī** may mean *of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves*.

* St. Jerome's Bible. Motto of the Johns Hopkins University.

¹ Compare § 660.

² Compare § 665.

408.

VOCABULARY

e'go, me'ī, I.

tū, tu'ī, you.

me'ī, of myself.

tu'ī, of yourself.

su'ī, of himself, etc.

dēdi'tiō, -ō'nis, f., surrender.

dē'dō, -ere, dē'didī, dē'ditus,

(trans.) give up, surrender,
abandon.

respon'deō, -ē're, respon'dī,

respōn'sus, answer, reply.

neque, neither, and not.

409. What Latin words do the following suggest?

egotism

me

respond

vision.

EXERCISE ON FORMS

410. Translate, distinguishing between the personal and the reflexive pronouns:

1. Tū mē vidēs. 2. Ego mē videō. 3. Nōs vōs laudāmus.
4. Puella sē vīcit. 5. Vōs nōbīs librōs dedistis.

411. Translate:

1. We saw you. 2. You praised us. 3. We came with you.
4. You told the story to me. 5. The boys praised themselves.

EXERCISES

412. Translate; tell to which class each of the pronouns belongs:

(a) 1. Puellae inter sē laudant. 2. Vōbīs maiōra dōna pollicēbimur. 3. Tūne mihi fābulam nārrāvistī? 4. Māter tē semper laudat sed sē semper culpāt. 5. Quaesivērunt ā mē quis essem et quō ex locō vēnissem.

(b) 1. Lēgātis respondit sē pācem factūrum esse. 2. Ante prīmam lūcem hostēs sē dēdidērunt. 3. Respondēs tē ducī persuāsūrum esse ut paulum morētur. 4. Ego¹ et tū quae-

¹ Notice the order of personal pronouns in Latin: first, second, third. The personal pronoun as subject is expressed only when there is emphasis or contrast.

rēmus quamobrem dēditionem fēcerint. 5. Caesarem certiorē faciunt agrōs ab Helvētiis vāstātōs esse neque sē ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre posse.

413. *Translate, expressing all the pronouns:*

(a) 1. The general responds that he will not surrender. 2. In what city did we see you a little while ago? 3. I know who you are, and you know who I am. 4. You have been good children, and I shall give you a beautiful gift. 5. We feared¹ that you had not told us all things about yourself.

(b) 1. Let us not fear the enemy and make a surrender. 2. The city extends three miles in length. 3. We boys are a little younger than you girls. 4. The lieutenant promised that he would get possession of the camp of the enemy. 5. The senator of whose surrender we had heard responded a little.

ORAL EXERCISES

414. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr tū mē melior es? 2. Tūne tē saepe laudās? 3. Quis vōbīs dōna dedit? 4. Quī discipulī ā magistrō laudātī sunt? 5. Dēdamne mē?

¹ After verbs of fearing *ut* is translated *that not*; and *nē*, *that*.

LESSON LI

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

*In lumine tuo videbimus lumen. — In thy light we shall see light.**

415. The so-called **possessive pronouns** are merely the adjective forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns.

me'us, -a, -um,¹ *my, mine.*

no'ster, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*

tu'us, -a, -um, *your, yours* (belonging to one person).

ve'ster, -tra, -trum, *your, yours* (belonging to more than one).

su'us, -a, -um, *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.*

(a) The possessive pronouns are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, and, like adjectives, they agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

416.

VOCABULARY

me'us, -a, -um, *my, mine.*

no'ster, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*

tu'us, -a, -um, *your, yours.*

ve'ster, -tra, -trum, *your, yours.*

su'us, -a, -um, *his, her, their.*

praefi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus,
place over, or in command of.

praepō'nō, -ere, -po'suī, -itus,
place in command of.

prae'stō, -ā're, -stitī, -stitus, *excel, surpass.*

prae'sum, -esse, -fuī, have com-
mand of, be at the head of.

su'persum, -esse, -fuī, be left over,
survive.

417. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

preposition

applaud.

benefactor

riparian

* The motto of Columbia University.

¹ Voc. sing. masc. **mī.**

RULES

418. Gender of Possessives. — The gender of a possessive pronoun depends not upon the gender of the person to whom it refers, but upon the gender of the noun possessed.

Marcus loves his mother. **Mārcus mātrem suam amat.**

Julia loves her mother. **Iūlia mātrem suam amat.**

Julia loves her father. **Iūlia patrem suum amat.**

419. Dative with Compounds. — The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes **circum.**

But if the verb which forms part of the compound is transitive, it may take a direct object in the accusative. This may be either in addition to the dative taken by the compound as a whole, or without it.

Brutus was in command of the ships. **Brūtus nāvibus praeerat.**

He placed Brutus in command of the ships. **Brūtum nāvibus praeposuit.**

Brutus sent the ships ahead. **Brūtus nāvēs praemisit.**

EXERCISES

420. Translate:

- (a) 1. Caesar exercituī praefuit. 2. Rōmānī omnibus virtūte praestitērunt. 3. Nāvibus longīs Brūtum praefēcit. 4. Laudābiminī, puerī,¹ et ā mātře vestrā et ā magistrō vestrō. 5. Deī comitēs nostrī semper sunt et rēbus hominū praesunt.

- (b) 1. Imperātor castrīs quae ad ripam flūminis posita erant Mārcum praeposuit. 2. Dixērunt peditēs suōs paulum morātōs esse. 3. Nostrī² oppidum fortius oppugnāverant quam

¹ The vocative, the case of address, has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns of the second declension ending in **-us**, where the vocative ends in **-e**.

² The possessive is often used substantively; as, **nostrī**, *our men*.

vestrī. 4. Centum ex equitibus superfuērunt neque sē dēdīdērunt. 5. Dīcēbant sē bene fēcisse neque vōs suōs agrōs vāstāre dēbēre.

421. *Translate:*

(a) 1. I am in command of myself. 2. The girl excels her brother in courage. 3. Who made the war-ships? 4. The general responded that he had placed a youth in command of the forces. 5. The mother asked her brave son why he did not use his sword.

(b) 1. We asked why they had not sent aid to us. 2. Our faithful lieutenant had been placed in charge of the heavy baggage. 3. We have informed Caesar that our army will make an attack on the enemy at daybreak. 4. Why did our senator not tell us about the surrender a little while ago? 5. My sister and your brother are friends of the man who has command of the infantry.

ORAL EXERCISE

422. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis legiōnī praeerat? 2. Tūne exercituī Brūtum praepōnēs? 3. Quī discipulus aliīs praestitit? 4. Suntne tuī amīcī meīs meliōrēs? 5. Nōne nostrī vōbīs virtūte praestant?



Copyright, Photographische Gesellschaft. Permission of Berlin Photo. Co., N. Y.

Spring—An Ancient Festival.

LESSON LII

FERŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS

Qui transtulit sustinet.—He who has brought us across (the sea) sustains us.*

423. Learn the **conjugation of ferō** in the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, active and passive, § 593.

424.

VOCABULARY

fe'rō, fer're, tu'lī, lā'tus, bear, carry.	īn'ferō, īnfer're, in'tulī, illā'tus, bring in, upon, or against.
cōn'ferō, ¹ cōnfer're, cōn'tulī, collā'tus, bring together, collect, (with sē) betake one's self.	bel'lum īnfer're, to make war on.
dif'ferō, differ're, dis'tulī, dīlā'tus, scatter, differ.	sig'na īnfer're, to advance.
ef'ferō, effer're, ex'tulī, ēlā'tus, bring out, carry away.	expug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, take by storm.
	Rhē'nus, -ī, m., Rhine.
	que, conj., and (always appended to another word which in construction belongs after it).

425. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

transfer conference infer differ

EXERCISES ON FORMS

426. *Translate:*

1. Fers, fertur, lātus erit, feram. 2. Distulit, differet, differimus, distulerō. 3. Intulistī, īnferent, īnferrent, intulerat. 4. Collātī erant, feruntur, fert, ferris. 5. Tulērunt, infert, tulistī, cōnferam.

* The motto of Connecticut.

¹ Notice the way the accent of the principal parts of compounds of **ferō** swings back and forth like a pendulum.

427. Translate:

1. Let us differ, he will bring in. 2. They had carried out, we collect, you (*sing.*) carry. 3. They will have collected, he is carried. 4. They had differed, you (*plur.*) have carried. 5. We shall scatter, let them advance to the attack.

EXERCISES**428. Translate:**

(a) 1. Scimus Caesarem Germānīs bellum intulisse. 2. Inter sē linguā lēgibusque differunt. 3. Trāns Rhēnum sē cōferent nē ā cōpiīs Rōmānīs vincī possint. 4. Decima legiō signa infert et urbem expugnat. 5. Sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt.

(b) 1. Quis castrīs praeest? 2. Rōmānī cum Germānīs bellum gessērunt. 3. Iniuriās rēgis malī ferre nōn possumus. 4. Nē Galliae bellum inferāmus. 5. Nostri virtūte Gallis praestitērunt et fortissimī vīsī sunt.

429. Translate:

(a) 1. They collected all their weapons into the towns. 2. Brutus made war on his enemies. 3. The infantry and the cavalry differ from each other. 4. We marched many miles that we might make war on the chiefs. 5. The leader ordered the van to advance and kill the enemy or scatter (them).

(b) 1. The auxiliary troops were placed on the left wing. 2. The king had told that the hostage had been carried away. 3. We asked who he was and why he had come. 4. The Gauls who dwelt across the Rhine surrendered themselves to their conqueror. 5. They could not bring aid to their men.

ORAL EXERCISE**430. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Habēsne magnum timōrem? 2. Nōne milītēs signa inferent? 3. Centuriōne interfectus erat? 4. Cūr animālia omnēs in partēs ferēbantur? 5. Quibus Rōmānī bellum intulērunt?

LESSON LIII

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Semper eadem.—*Always the same.**

431. The **demonstrative pronouns** point out an object; they are used either substantively or adjectively. They are :

hic, *this* (near the speaker).

iste, *that* (near you).

ille, *that* (remote from both speaker and one addressed).

is, *that* (often used as the personal pronoun of the third person).

īdem, *the same*.

(a) The first three are often called demonstratives of the first, second, and third persons.

432. The **intensive pronoun** is **ipse**, *self*.

(a) Learn the declension of **hic**, **iste**, **ille**, **is**, **īdem**, **ipse**, § 582.

433.

VOCABULARY

hic, **haec**, **hoc**, *this*.

ī'dem, **eadem**, **īdem**, *same*.

il'le, **illa**, **illud**, *that*.

ip'se, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, *self, himself*.

is, **ea**, **īd**, *that, he*.

is'te, **ista**, **istud**, *that*.

Len'tulus, **-ī**, m., *Lentulus*.

nā'tiō, **-ō'nis**, f., *nation, tribe*.

tumul'tus, **-ūs**, m., *disturbance, tumult*.

sīc, adv., *so, in this way*.

a'gō, **a'gere**, **ē'gī**, **āc'tus**, *do, act, drive*.

īu'beō, **iubē're**, **īus'sī**, **īus'sus**, *order*. It takes an infinitive with subject accusative.

434. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

action

identify

jussive

national

* The motto of Queen Elizabeth. Quoted also in the masculine and neuter genders.

EXERCISES

435. *Translate; tell which demonstrative pronouns are used substantively and which adjectively:*

(a) 1. Huius virī, hae fēminae, huic centuriōnī, illōrum militum, illī puerō, illīs hominibus. 2. Hic est malus, ille est peior. 3. Iste tuus amīcus est sed eōrum inimīcus. 4. Ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. 5. Caesar amīcum suum vocāvit et eius¹ virtūtem laudāvit.

(b) 1. Quis sim, sciēs ex eō amīcō quem ad tē mīsī. 2. Ille dīxit sē habēre litterās ā Lentulō. 3. Eaedem nātiōnēs Rōmae² amīcae nōn erant. 4. Haec omnia sīc agentur ut rēs pūblica sine tumultū servētur. 5. Eōdem tempore Caesar suās legiōnēs laudārī iussit.

436. *Translate:*

(a) 1. I myself came to your city. 2. These are our friends; those are your enemies. 3. On the same day he will set out with two legions. 4. Those men ordered³ the cavalry to drive the enemy from the city. 5. The nations of the earth are often in a great tumult.

(b) 1. He will tell you that we have come. 2. We shall order³ auxiliary troops to attack the rear of the enemy. 3. Caesar very often made war upon his¹ enemies, and killed their leaders. 4. These things will be done by Lentulus himself as quickly as possible. 5. The brave troops bore their standards to the bank of the Rhine and took the cities of the enemy by storm.

¹ When *his, her, their*, etc., do not refer to the subject, use the genitive of *is*.

Notice that *suus* refers to the subject of the sentence in which it stands. When, however, it is used in a subordinate clause, it may refer to the subject of the principal sentence.

² § 269.

³ Translate in two ways: (1) with *iubeō* and (2) with *imperō*.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

437. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Patrum nostrōrum memoriā. 2. À castrīs suīs.
3. Paulō ante mediam noctem. 4. Ex omnibus partibus.
5. Multis dē causīs.



The Roman Goddess Minerva.

LESSON LIV

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

*Sic semper tyrannis. — Thus always to tyrants.**

438. Double questions are introduced by the following particles: **utrum . . . an; -ne . . . an; (. . . an).**

<i>Is he good or bad?</i>	{	Utrum bonus est an malus? Bonusne est an malus? Bonus est an malus?
---------------------------	---	--

(a) When the second part of the question is negative, **annōn** is used.

Is he good or not? **Estne bonus annōn?**

439.

VOCABULARY

an, conj., or; **annōn**, or not.

u'trum, conj.; not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, *whether*.

antepō'nō, -ere, -po'suī, -po'situs, *place before, prefer*.

cognō'scō, **cognō'scere**, **cognō'vī**, **cog'nitus**, *become acquainted with, learn, know*.

coniun'gō, **coniun'gere**, **coniūn'xī**, **coniūnc'tus**, *join together, unite*.
pe'tō, -ere, -ī'vī, -(iī), -ī'tus, *seek, ask*. It takes accusative of the thing and ablative of the person with **ā** or **ab**.

equitā'tus, -ūs, m., *cavalry*.

Pompē'ius, **Pompē'ī**, m., *Pompey*.

cōnsī'dō, -ere, -sē'dī, —, *encamp, settle*.

440. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

anteposition	conjunction	recognize	petition
--------------	-------------	-----------	----------

* The motto of Virginia.

RULE

441. Quality or Description. — The quality or description of a noun is expressed by the genitive or ablative with an adjective.

He was a man of great courage. **Erat vir magnae virtūtis, or
Erat vir magnā virtūte.**

(a) *Definite measurement* must be expressed by the genitive.

The wall was of great height. **Mūrus magnā altitūdine erat.**

It was a wall of six feet in height. **Mūrus sex pedum altitūdine erat.**



A German Bodyguard.

EXERCISES

442. Translate :

(a) 1. Pompēius magnā virtūte vir erat. 2. Circum
moenia fossa quīdecim pedum altitūdine est. 3. Utrum
domī erās, annōn? 4. Petivit utrum domī essēs.
5. Utrum Pompēius Cicerōnī antepōnētur, annōn?

(b) 1. Caesar ex Gallis hominēs magnārum viriū petēbat
ut in suō exercitū eīs ūterētur. 2. Antepōnātur omnibus
Pompēius. 3. Mīlītēs omnia tēla quae ab equitatū hostium
relicta erant cōntulērunt. 4. Cōpia Gallōs vīcerant et in
eōrum finibus cōnsidēbant. 5. Ducem cum cohortibus duo-
decim et magnō numerō equitatūs in hostium finēs proficīsci

iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur et tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur.

443. Translate :

(a) 1. The Germans were men of great size. 2. We did not know whether he had been in the house or in the field.



A Roman Urn.

3. Pompey orders the lieutenant and his companions to encamp at the foot of a very high mountain. 4. I saw the girl herself. 5. The two places were joined by a wall of three feet in height.

(b) 1. We have lived many years without slaves. 2. Those who had been wounded were carried out, and the legions advanced that they might not be conquered by a leader of such

valor. 3. Senator, tell us who has been placed in command of the one hundred soldiers, and why they do not surrender. 4. Were the weapons carried away or left in the camp? 5. What shall I say about Cicero and Pompey?

LESSON LV

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

*Ars est celare artem. — Art conceals art.**

444. Pronouns which do not refer to definite persons or things are called **indefinite pronouns**. As an indefinite pronoun the simple form **quis** (substantive), **quī** (adjective) is not common, but it has several compounds.

1. The substantive forms are:

M. AND F.		NEUT.
aliquis , <i>some one, something.</i>		aliquid
quisque , <i>each one, every one.</i>		quidque
MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
quīdam	quaedam	quiddam , <i>a certain one.</i>

2. The adjective forms are:

MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
aliquī	aliqua	aliquid , <i>any.</i>
quisque	quaeque	quodque , <i>each.</i>
quīdam	quaedam	quoddam , <i>a certain.</i>

(a) In indefinite pronouns only the pronominal part is declined. **M** is changed to **n** before **d**; **quendam**, not **quemdam**. Learn the declension of **aliquis**, § 585.

* Literally: *Art is to conceal art.*

445.

VOCABULARY

ar'ma, -ōrum, n., *arms, implements of war.*

ini'tium, ini'tī, n., *beginning.*

re'ferō, refer're, ret'tulī, relā'tus, *bring back, report.*

rever'tō, -ere, -tī, -sus,	{	<i>turn back, return; the perfect stem tenses are from the active, the others from the deponent.</i>
rever'tor, -ī, reversus sum,		

quan'tus, -a, -um, *how great, how much.*

inte'reā, adv., *in the meantime.*

post, prep. (with acc.), *after (of time), behind (of place).*

a'liquis, a'liquid (a'liquī, a'liqua, a'liquod, adj.), *some one, something.*

quī'dam, quae'dam, quid'dam (quod'dam, adj.), *a certain one.*

quis'que, quid'que (quis'que, quae'que, quod'que, adj.), *every one, each.*

446. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

initial

refer

quantity

revert

EXERCISES

447. *Translate; tell to what class each pronoun belongs:*

(a) 1. Aliquem ad tē mittent. 2. Quisque multō diē profectus est. 3. Ab hīs quaesivit, quae cīvitatēs quantaeque in armīs essent. 4. Paulum frūmentī quemque domō efferre iubent. 5. Multae nātīōnēs auxilium ā suīs amīcīs petiērunt.

(b) 1. Quaedam legiō Rōmam revertētur, et alicui victōriam nūntiābit. 2. Māter aliīs suōs liberōs antepōnet. 3. Extrēma pars huius librī initiō difficilior est. 4. Eōdem tempore equitātus noster et aliī quī cum eīs fuerant sē in castra recipiēbant. 5. Lēgātī haec¹ sē ad suōs relātūrōs² dīxērunt et post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē castra movēret petiērunt.

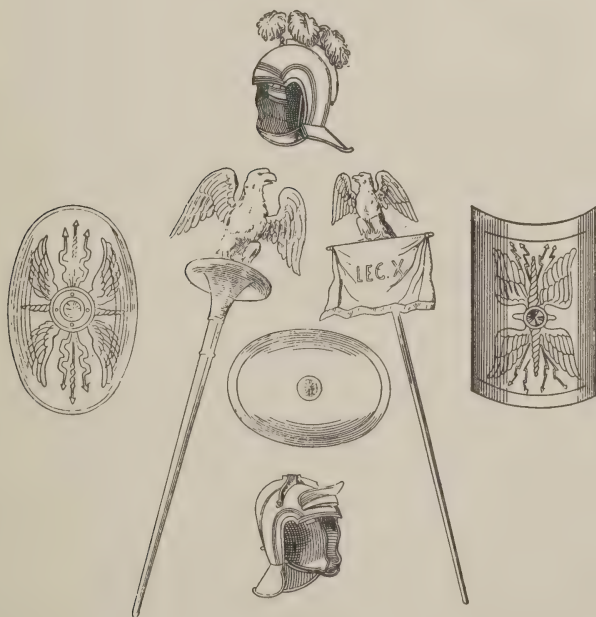
¹ See § 16.

² Esse is often omitted in infinitives.

448. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The king gave arms to some one. 2. Pompey made a good beginning. 3. Our country is much loved by every one. 4. We do not know how great a number can return. 5. After the battle the soldiers were ordered to retreat into camp.

(b) 1. A certain one will return to report all things to Caesar. 2. They had encamped across a river of great depth. 3. I prefer her to all my other friends. 4. This man was a sailor; that one, a farmer. 5. The cavalry will drive their horses into the territory of the Belgians, and in the meantime the leader will learn something about the character of the enemy.



Roman Arms.

LESSON LVI

REVIEW

*Mens aequa in arduis. — A mind serene in difficulties.**

449. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can, which seem to be derived from the following :

fuga	ante	quaerō	ego
respondeō	praepōnō	praesum	cōferō
differō	īnferō	ferō	nātiō
tumultus	agō	coniungō	arma
initium	referō	revertō	quantus

450. Word Drill. — 1. Name the classes of pronouns and tell why each is so called. 2. Name the possessive pronouns. 3. Which demonstrative pronoun is commonly used as the personal pronoun of the third person? 4. Give the Latin for *Who are you?* *What man is this?*

451. Form Drill. — 1. Decline *hic, ille, is, idem*. 2. Decline the Latin for *another soldier*. 3. Decline the relative pronoun. 4. Write one Latin sentence containing a personal, possessive, relative, demonstrative, and an interrogative pronoun. 5. When do we use *tuus* and when *vester*?

452. Syntax Drill. — (a) 1. How is *utrum* used and what does it mean? 2. What case and mood follow *iubeō*? *imperō*? 3. With what compound verbs is the dative

* Motto on the statue of Warren Hastings in Calcutta.

used? 4. In what does a relative pronoun agree with its antecedent? 5. What determines the gender of a possessive pronoun?

(b) Give the Latin for:

1. We saw the man who had been conquered.
2. We knew who had been conquered.
3. We knew that the man had been conquered.
4. The man fights that he may not be conquered.
5. The man fought so bravely that he was not conquered.

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

453. 1. Audīvimus quae oppida tūta essent. 2. Multās rēs ā Caesare quaesivērunt dē profectiōne. 3. Liberī sē paulum laudant. 4. Rōmānī exercituī Caesarem praeficiunt. 5. Dux tuus, Mārce, secundā vigiliā interfectus est. 6. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit militibus imperāvit ut signa inferrent. 7. Polliceor hoc vōbīs. 8. Eadem ab eō dicta erant. 9. Scivērunt equitātum in Germāniam missum esse. 10. Cuique dōnum dabō.

FĀBULAE FACILĒS

Mūrī Spartae

454. Quīdam ex Spartānō quaesivit: "Cūr mūrōs nōn habet Sparta?" Spartānus respondit: "Nostra urbs mūrōs optimōs habet, incolārum fortium virtūtem."

Virtūs Spartāna

Rēx Spartānus dīxit: "Meī cīvēs numquam quaesivērunt, 'Quot sunt hostēs?' sed 'Ubi sunt?'"

Iocus Cicerōnis

Fēmina quaedam, iūniōrem sē esse simulāns quam erat, dictitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre; cui Cicerō dīxit: "Verum est, nam hoc vīgintī annōs audiō."

LESSON LVII

PARTICIPLES

*Ave, Imperator! Morituri te salutant. — Hail, Emperor! Those who are about to die salute thee.**

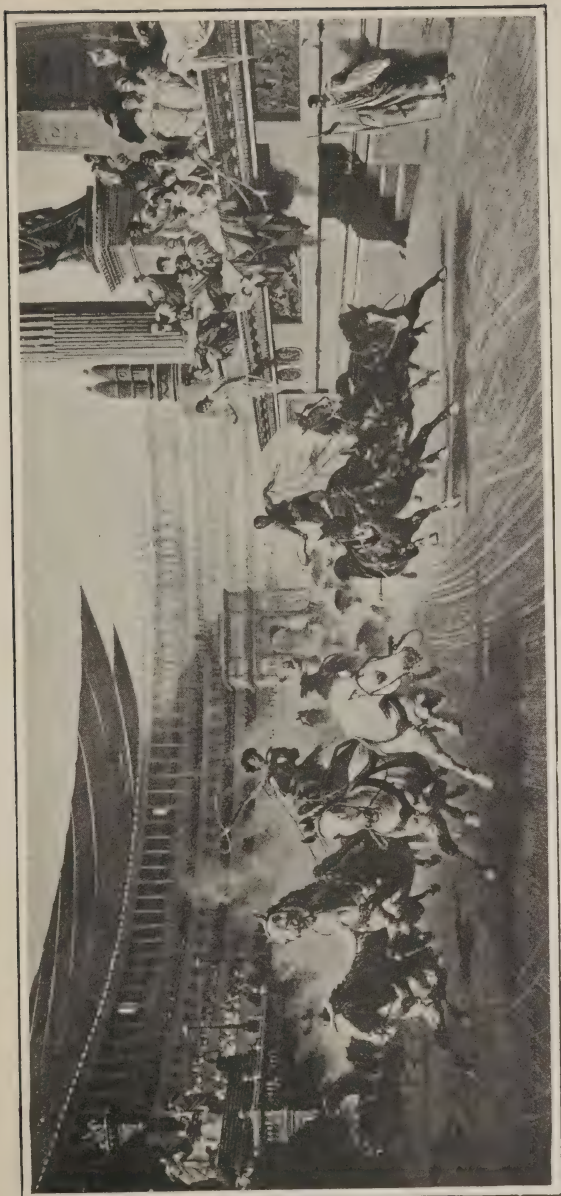
455. There are **four participles**: the *present* and *future* in the active voice and the *perfect* and *future* (or gerundive) in the passive voice.

Present Active Participle = <i>Present stem</i> + -ns or -ēns	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{portāns} \\ \text{monēns} \\ \text{dūcēns} \\ \text{audiēns} \end{array} \right.$
Future Active Participle = <i>Participial stem</i> + ūr + <i>endings of magnus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{portātūrus} \\ \text{monitūrus} \\ \text{ductūrus} \\ \text{audītūrus} \end{array} \right.$
Perfect Passive Participle = <i>Participial stem</i> + <i>endings of magnus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{portātus} \\ \text{monitus} \\ \text{ductus} \\ \text{audītus} \end{array} \right.$
Future Passive Participle or Gerundive = <i>Present stem</i> + nd or end + <i>endings of magnus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{portandus} \\ \text{monendus} \\ \text{dūcendus} \\ \text{audiendus} \end{array} \right.$

Note. — For **iō** verbs see § 320.

456. Declension of Participles. — All participles are declined like **magnus** except the present, which is declined like **potēns**. A participle is a verbal adjective. Like a

* The call of the Roman gladiators upon entering the arena for the gladiatorial contests.



A Roman Chariot Race.

verb, it may take an object and be modified by an adverb; like an adjective, it agrees with its noun or pronoun, in gender, number, and case.¹

We saw the farmer (as he was) driving his horses swiftly. Agricola
equōs vĕlōciter agentem vīdimus.

They saw the city (which had been) captured by the enemy. Urbem
ab hostibus captam vīdērunt.

(a) A participle is often best translated by a phrase or clause.

457. Time of Participles. — Like the infinitive, the time denoted by the participle is relative, depending on the time of the principal verb. The present participle denotes the *same* time as the principal verb; the perfect participle, time *before*; and the future participle, time *after* the principal verb.

Learn all the participles, active and passive, of **portō**, **moneō**, **dūcō**, **audiō**, **sum**, **possum**, **ferō**, **capiō**, §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 591, 593, 590.

458.

VOCABULARY

fi'dēs, -eī, f., *faith, pledge, confidence.*

lī'tus, -oris, n., *shore (of the sea).*

senā'tus, -ūs, m., *senate.*

addū'cō, -ere, -dū'xī, -duc'tus, *lead to, influence.*

re'gō, -ere, **rē'xī**, **rēc'tus**, *rule, manage.*

sapient'ter, adv., *wisely.*

(a) Form all the infinitives and participles of **referō**, **regō**.

459. What Latin words do the following suggest?

fidelity

sapient

littoral

reference

EXERCISES

460. Translate:

(a) 1. Ad Caesarem auxilium petentēs vērunt. 2. Virōs victōs laudābimus. 3. Stāns in lītore armīs ūtar. 4. Rēx

¹ Compare § 702.

nātiōnem bene regere cōnātus laudātus est. 5. Centuriōnēs ferentēs suum ducem interfectum veniunt.

(b) 1. Audīvimus tē mortem nōn verērī. 2. Caesar suōs¹ impetum fortiter sustinentēs vīdit. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant. 4. Aliquem in senātū sapienter dīcentem audīvī. 5. Intereā ā plūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quibus pācem petentibus respondet obsidēsque ad sē mittī iubet.

461. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Kings are not always loved when ruling wisely and well. 2. Having been influenced by the senate, the Roman people praised their generals. 3. Caesar gave a pledge to the Gauls when they were seeking peace. 4. Pompey, after being placed in command of the army, conquered many nations. 5. The general, seeing the soldiers of the tenth legion fighting long and fiercely, knew that they would not surrender.

(b) 1. In the beginning of the war Caesar saw all the forces of the Belgians setting out against him. 2. Let us remain at the seashore all summer. 3. This man lived in a city of great size; that one, on the seashore. 4. The centurions differ from each other in many respects. 5. The tired horseman returns to the camp after the battle and seeks aid from his companions.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

462. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī. 2. Senātus populusque Rōmānus. 3. Ōrātiōnem habēre. 4. Plūs posse. 5. Plūrimum posse.

¹ See § 420, Footnote 2.

LESSON LVIII

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

*Consule Planco. — When Plancus was consul.**

463. The **Ablative Absolute** consists of two words in the ablative case grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It may consist of (1) a substantive and a participle, **signō datō**; (2) a substantive and an adjective, **periculō magnō**; (3) two substantives, **Caesare imperātōre**.

The Ablative Absolute is usually best translated as a clause and generally denotes time, cause, condition, or concession. The substantive in the Ablative Absolute never denotes the same person or thing as the subject or object of the main verb.

1. **Signō datō, oppidum oppugnāvērunt.** *The signal having been given (literally), when the signal had been given, they attacked the town.*

2. **Periculō magnō, Caesar signum dedit.** *The danger being great (literally), since the danger was great, Caesar gave the signal.*

3. **Caesare imperātōre, ad victōriam exercitus dūcētur.** *Caesar being general (literally), if Caesar is general, the army will be led to victory.*

4. **Multīs interfectīs, oppidum expugnāvimus.** *Many having been killed (literally), although many had been killed, we took the town by storm.*

(a) The verb **sum** has no present participle, consequently the connecting word *being* cannot be expressed in the Latin of 2 and 3, but must be supplied in the translation.

(b) The participle and the adjective must agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case.

* Horace. An expression used by the Romans for "In the good old days."

464. Perfect Participles. — There is no perfect active participle in Latin. We cannot put literally into Latin : *The leader, having given the signal, fought bravely.* There is no Latin word meaning *having given*, but the same idea may be expressed by changing the voice of the participle and making it agree with *signal* instead of *leader*, as : *The signal having been given, the leader fought bravely.* **Signō datō, dux fortiter pugnāvit.**

(a) Such an ablative absolute may be rendered as an independent coördinate clause : *The leader gave the signal and fought bravely.*

(b) A deponent verb has a perfect participle with an active meaning, so no change is necessary in the case of a deponent verb. *Having encouraged the Remi, Caesar ordered the entire senate to come to him.* **Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre iussit.**

465.

VOCABULARY

aedifi'cium, -ī, n., *building.*

Gal'ba, -ae, m., *Galba.*

immortā'lis, -e, *immortal.*

invic'tus, -a, -um, *invincible.*

acci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus, *receive, accept.*

trā'dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, surrender.*

conten'dō, -ere, -dī, -ten'tus, *hasten, contend.*

incen'dō, -ere, -cen'dī, -cēn'sus, *set on fire, burn, (with acc.).*

praemit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, *send ahead.*

466. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

edifice invincible incendiary tradition

EXERCISES

467. *Translate; render ablatives absolute literally and as clauses, and decide which makes the better English:*

(a) 1. Spē āmissā fūgērunt. 2. Pāce factā, cūr diūtius pugnātis? 3. Omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt. 4. Intereā milītēs legiōnum duārum, proeliō nūntiātō, in summō colle ab hostibus

vidēbantur. 5. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ab iīs nātiōnibus missī sunt lēgātī ad Caesarem quī sē obsidēs datūrōs esse pollicērentur.

(b) 1. Hostēs ōrdinem Caesaris agminis nōn cognōvērunt. 2. Omnem equitātum quī¹ novissimum agmen morārētur prae-mīsīt. 3. Rōmānī intellēxērunt deōs immortalēs plūrimū² posse. 4. Cicerō dīxit deōs immortalēs huic invictō populō auxilium esse lātūrōs. 5. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs, primīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem hostēs accēpit.

468. *Translate; express the subordinate clauses by the use of the ablative absolute when possible:*

(a) 1. While Caesar is leader, our forces are invincible. 2. Since many soldiers had been killed, Pompey received recruits into his army. 3. When the cavalry had been sent ahead, the infantry followed without fear. 4. Having burned all the buildings on the shore, they destroyed the ships of the enemy. 5. When these things have been done, they fortify the towns and carry the grain out of the fields into the towns.

(b) 1. It is easier to promise than to do. 2. The senate was very powerful among the Romans. 3. When the letters had been received, Caesar enlisted two legions in hither Gaul. 4. Let us surrender and hasten home as quickly as possible. 5. Let the senate make as good laws as possible that the people may prefer the senate to a king.

¹ quī = ut is.

² Adverbial Accusative of Degree.

LESSON LIX

SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CUM

*Abeunt studia in mores. — Pursuits pass over into habits.**

469. Clauses introduced by cum may denote *circumstance, cause, or concession*.

470. Cum Circumstantial.¹ — **Cum**, meaning *when*, takes the subjunctive to denote the circumstances under which an action took place. This use is commonly found only in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses.

When the purpose of the **cum** clause is merely to give the date of the action or the state described by the principal sentence, the verb is put in the indicative.

When this had been announced to Caesar, he set out from the city.
Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, ab urbe profectus est.

When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Aeduī.**

471. Cum Causal. — **Cum**, meaning *since*, regularly takes the subjunctive.

Since this is so, I will go. **Quae cum ita sint, ibō.**

Since they were retreating, we attacked. **Cum sē reciperent, oppugnāvimus.**

472. Cum Concessive. — **Cum**, meaning *although*, takes the subjunctive.

Although we had burned the town, they did not surrender. **Cum oppidum incendissēmus, nōn sē trādidērunt.**

* Ovid.

¹ This is sometimes called **cum temporal**.

Although Caesar thought that the Roman legions were invincible, he did not hasten into Gaul. Caesar, cum Rōmānās legiōnēs esse invictās exīstimāret, in Galliam nōn contendit.

(a) The tense usage in all these subjunctive clauses is the same as that described in § 364.

473. Conjunctions with Indicative. —

1. **Ubi**, *when*, and **postquam**, *after* (conjunction), take the indicative.

2. **Quod** and **quia**, *because*, and **quoniam**, *since*, regularly take the indicative to express cause.

3. **Quamquam**, meaning *although*, takes the indicative.

474.

VOCABULARY

cau'sa, -ae, f., *cause, reason.*

cau'sā (with gen.), *for the sake of.*

mō'tus, -ūs, m., *movement, revolt.*

potes'tās, potestā'tis, f., *power, opportunity.*

rū'mor, -ō'ris, m., *rumor, report.*

re'liquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest.*

af'ferō, -fer're, at'tulī, allā'tus, *bring.*

cum, conj., *when, since, although.*

trādū'cō, -dū'cere, -dūx'ī, -duc'-tus, *lead across.*

commit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'-sus, *join*; **proelium com-mittere**, *join battle, begin an engagement.*

repe'riō, -ī're, rep'perī, reper'-tus, *find, discover.*

ta'men, adv., *nevertheless, still, however.*

cum prī'mum, *as soon as.*

475. What Latin words do the following suggest?

commotion

commit

rumor

traduce

EXERCISES

476. *Translate; give the reason for the mood and tense of each verb:*

(a) 1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur. 2. Cum tēla sua āmīsisset, pugnāre nōn potuit. 3. Cum spēs victōriæ magna sit, tamen centu-

riōnēs signa nōn īferunt. 4. Caesar, ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, proelium commisit. 5. Liberōrum nostrōrum causā nē in potestāte hostium diūtius sīmus.

(b) 1. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitatēs in armīs essent, causam bellī repperit. 2. Dare¹ melius est quam accipere. 3. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus relīctīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit. 4. Partem suārum cōpiārum flūmen magnā lātītūdine trādūcere² cōnātī sunt ut castra expugnārent. 5. Multa dē stellīs atque eārum mōtū, dē terrae magnitūdine, dē deōrum immortālium vīribus et potestāte scīmus.

477. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Although they have very many wounds, they fight for the sake of power. 2. When the Gauls had made many revolts, Caesar conquered them and sent them under the yoke. 3. Although we have found out many things about the stars, there is much which we do not know. 4. When the legions had been left in the camp, the general led the remaining soldiers across the territory of the enemy. 5. Although rumors of the danger had been brought to us, yet we did not give up hope.

(b) 1. When the people had been informed concerning the death of Cicero, many declared that he had been an excellent consul and had saved his country. 2. She excels her brother in diligence. 3. The forces of the Gauls will encamp between the river and the hill. 4. Although they were men of great power and courage, nevertheless they were not invincible. 5. In a very short time we found out who had been bringing evil reports about us.

¹ An infinitive or clause used substantively is neuter singular, and the adjective accordingly is put in the neuter.

² *Trādūcō* governs two accusatives.



Copyright, Photographische Gesellschaft.

Permission of Berlin Photo. Co., N. Y.

The Colosseum.

LESSON LX

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Si monumentum requiris, circumspice. — *If you seek a monument, look about you.**

478. A conditional sentence consists of two parts: (a) the *conditional clause* and (b) the *conclusion*. For example, in the sentence, *If you say this, you are wrong*, the clause introduced by *if* is the conditional clause, while *you are wrong* is the conclusion.

In Latin the conditional clause is most frequently introduced by *sī, if*.

There are different kinds of conditional sentences.¹

479. Conditional Sentences of Fact. — Sometimes the conditional clause assumes something to be true, and the conclusion contains a statement of fact. In this case the indicative is used both in the conditional clause and in the conclusion.

If Caesar fights, he conquers. *Sī Caesar pugnat, vincit.*

If the boy was good, he was praised. *Sī puer bonus erat, laudābātur.*

480. Conditional Sentences of Doubt. — In this class the conclusion states that something *would* take place if a

* Motto on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in St. Paul's Cathedral, London, of which Wren was the architect. From this was adapted the motto of Michigan: *Si quaeris peninsulam amoenam, circumspice.* *If you seek a delightful peninsula, look about you.*

¹ Notice how closely conditions in Latin resemble conditions in English.

certain condition *should* be fulfilled. This is the statement not of a *fact*, as in the first class, but of an *idea* depending upon something concerning which there is a doubt. Both verbs are put in the subjunctive.

If Caesar should fight, he would conquer. **SĪ Caesar pugnet, vincat.**

If the boy should be good, he would be praised. **SĪ puer bonus sit, laudētur.**

481. TABLE OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

CLASS	TIME	MOOD	TENSE	ILLUSTRATION
Fact	Present	Indicative	Present	1. <i>If Caesar fights, he conquers.</i> SĪ Caesar pugnat, vincit.
	Past		Imperfect or Perfect	2. <i>If Caesar was fighting, he was conquering.</i> SĪ Caesar pugnābat, vincēbat. <i>If Caesar fought, he conquered.</i> SĪ Caesar pugnāvit, vicit.
	Future		Future	3. <i>If Caesar fights, he will conquer.</i> SĪ Caesar pugnābit, vincet.
Doubt	Future	Subjunctive	Present	<i>If Caesar should fight, he would conquer.</i> SĪ Caesar pugnet, vincat.
Contrary to Fact	Present	Subjunctive	Imperfect	1. <i>If Caesar were fighting, he would conquer.</i> SĪ Caesar pugnāret, vinceret.
	Past		Pluperfect	2. <i>If Caesar had fought, he would have conquered.</i> SĪ Caesar pugnāvisset, vīcisset.

482. Conditional Sentences Contrary to Fact. — Both conclusions and conditions that are *contrary to fact* are expressed by the subjunctive. The use of the tenses should be carefully noted. If the thing is contrary to fact *at the present time*, the imperfect is used; if it is contrary to fact *in the past*, the pluperfect is used.

If Caesar were fighting, he would conquer. (This implies that Caesar is *not* fighting and so does *not* conquer. It is a condition in present time contrary to fact.) **Sī Caesar pugnāret, vinceret.**

If Caesar had fought, he would have conquered. (This implies the same as the last sentence except that the time is past instead of present.) **Sī Caesar pugnāvisset, vīcisset.**

483.

VOCABULARY

Ae'duus, -ī, m., *an Aeduan.*

Catili'na, -ae, m., *Catiline.*

dēfēn'sor, -ō'ris, m., *defender.*

ho'nor, -ō'ris, m., *honor, esteem.*

tur'ris, -is (-ium), f., *tower.*

ver'bum, -ī, n., *word; plural, speech.*

dēfen'dō, -ere, -fen'dī, -fēn'sus, *defend, guard.*

nū'dō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *strip, leave unprotected.*

sī, conj., *if.*

nī'si, conj., *if not, unless.*

e'tiam, adv., *also, even.*

484. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

honor

defend

nude

turret

EXERCISES

485. *Translate, first giving the mood, tense, and consequent time and class of each conditional sentence:*

(a) 1. Sī bonī essēmus, laudārēmur. 2. Sī perīculum cēlēs, nōn timeāmus. 3. Sī rēx bene rēxisset, nōn interfectus esset. 4. Sī pater tuus Rōmānus est, tū Rōmānus es. 5. Sī perīculum cognōscās, nōbīs nārrēs.

(b) 1. Sī urbēs bene dēfenderentur, capī nōn possent. 2. Sī urbs nūdātur, dēfendī nōn potest. 3. Sī tēlis ūtī

potuissent, nōn victī essent. 4. Sī puerī bonōs comitēs habērent, nōn pugnārent. 5. Sī oppidum mūniātur, id capere nōn possīmus.

486. *Translate, first noticing what time and thought are expressed and what mood and tense are accordingly required:*

(a) 1. If I were you, I would be better. 2. If you can run, I can follow you. 3. If you had delayed longer, you would have been blamed. 4. If we should make an end of the battle, many would survive. 5. If the attack had been made as quickly as possible, the forces would have fled.

(b) 1. If the king should return home, his friends would receive him gladly. 2. If the Aeduans were brave, the town would be taken by storm. 3. If Catiline had brought war on us, we should have sent him from the state. 4. If you have been good, you have been praised. 5. If the rest had fled, we should have discovered their flight.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

487. *Translate, first giving mood, tense, etc., as in § 485:*

(a) 1. Sī urbs ā nōbīs dēfendātur, hostēs eam nōn capere possint. 2. Sī illīs verbīs ūsus esset, culpātus esset. 3. Sī oppidum dēfēnsōribus nūdābātur, impetum diū sustinēre nōn poterat. 4. Sī mīles gravissimum vulnus accipiat, ex proeliō ā suīs comitibus ferātur. 5. Caesar honōris Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum esse dīxit.

(b) 1. Sī turris ad mūrū movērētur, in dēfēnsōrēs lapidēs iacerēmus. 2. Nulla causa est cūr tē tam saepe dēfendam. 3. Dux cum repperit ubi hostēs essent, celeriter proelium commisit. 4. Sī Catilīna in urbe ad hunc diem mānsisset, tantīs periculīs rem pūblicam nōn liberāvissēmus. 5. Senātus haec intellegit, consul videt; hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Etiam in senātum venit.

488. *Translate, first noticing the time, thought, etc., as in § 486:*

(a) 1. If a revolt had been made, the hostages would have been killed. 2. If your city should be stripped of defenders, what would you do? 3. If the king rules well, the citizens do that which he commands. 4. If the enemy's scouts should set fire to our camp, we would try to defend it. 5. If the guards had defended the place more diligently, the fortifications could not have been taken by storm.

(b) 1. Unless the city had been deprived of defenders, the army of the Aeduians would not have been conquered. 2. The remaining Gauls will be invincible. 3. When we have surrendered, we shall not attack the enemy. 4. When we had found out that the tower could be moved, we hastened to move it as quickly as possible. 5. If Cicero were living, he would be held in esteem by the men of our state.



Cicero delivering the First of his Famous Orations against Catiline.

LESSON LXI

REVIEW

*Divide et impera. — Divide and govern.**

489. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can, which seem to be derived from the following :

fidēs	invictus	regō	contineō
aedificium	immortālis	accipiō	contendō
incendō	trādō	mōtus	rūmor
reliquus	trādūcō	committō	causa
dēfendō	honor	turris	verbum

490. Form Drill. — 1. How is each participle formed and declined? 2. Of what three combinations may an Ablative Absolute consist? 3. Give four possible translations of **rūmōre audītō**. 4. Translate, first by a clause and then by an Ablative Absolute: (a) *When Caesar had brought the grain, they discovered a new danger.* (b) *Since his soldiers were not brave, the leader surrendered.*

491. Syntax Drill. — 1. Why is an Ablative Absolute necessary? 2. What three kinds of clauses may be introduced by **cum**? 3. When is the subjunctive used and when the indicative in a causal clause? in a concessive clause? 4. Give the law of Sequence of Tenses. 5. In Conditional Sentences what mood and tense are used to express (a) a fact in present, past, future time? (b) a statement contrary to fact in present, past time? (c) a doubt in future time?

* Motto of Louis XI of France.



The Court of a Roman House.

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

492. 1. Trēs arborēs in ōrdine stantēs manent. 2. Rēgnum in cīvitātē nostrā ā frātre tuō tenēbātur. 3. Posterō diē nostra aciēs in equitātum hostium signa intulit. 4. Armīs trāditīs sē dēfendere nōn possunt. 5. Decem legiōnibus cōscrip̄tis, in Galliam contendēs. 6. Cum finem proelī nox fēcisset, nūntius ad lēgātum missus est. 7. Reperiāmus magnitudinem silvae. 8. Cum fortiter impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, ā suō duce vidēbantur. 9. Līberōrum nostrōrum causā nē servī diūtius sīmus. 10. Multae cīvitātēs Gallōrum, quae ā Rōmānīs sub iugum missae erant, bellum intulērunt.

DOMUS RŌMĀNA

493. Pictūram Rōmānae domūs vidēmus quae pulcherrima est. Ante iānuam domūs Rōmānae erat vēstibulum. Rōmānīs mōs erat ut in līmine "Salvē" scriberent.

Iānitor ad iānuam saepe stābat. Ibi canis saepe erat aut in solō pīctūra canis cum verbīs "Cāvē canem" vidērī poterat. Super iānuam erat scriptum, "Nihil intret malī."

Interior domus in trēs partēs dīvīsa est. Eārum prīma pars appellāta est ātrium. Ibi in mediō tēctō apertum spatium relictum est, ut lūx et āēr intrārent. Pluvia per eundem locum in impluvium dēscendit. In ātriō dominus suōs amīcōs accipiēbat.

Pariēs pīctūrīs montium, flūminum, animālium atque virōrum et fēminārum pulchrē ōrnātus est. Ea pars, quae ātriō proxima erat, appellāta est tablinum. Ibi dominus tabulās familiārēs et pecūniam servāvīt.

Tertia pars domūs et pulcherrima erat peristylīum, in quō pulchrī flōrēs et fontēs columnīs marmoreīs inclūsī sunt. Inter tablinum et peristylīum vēlum erat.

Sī domus fenestrās habēbat, in superiōre parte parietis erant et parvae.

LESSON LXII

IMPERATIVES. COMMANDS

Ne tentes aut perfice. — Either don't attempt it or finish it.

494. Learn the **imperative**¹ active and passive of all the conjugations, §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591.

(a) The vocative is used as a case of address with the imperative.

Boys, be brave. Fortēs, puerī, este.

Marcus, fight with the enemy. Pugnā, Mārce, cum hostibus.

495. Learn the conjugation of **eō** in full, § 594.

496. TABLE OF COMMANDS

AFFIRMATIVE.	{	1st person.	Volitive Subjunctive. <i>Let us fight. Pugnēmus.</i>
		2d person.	Imperative. <i>Fight. Pugnāte.</i>
		3d person.	Volitive Subjunctive. <i>Let them fight. Purgent.</i>
NEGATIVE (Prohibitions).	{	1st person.	Nē with subjunctive. <i>Let us not fight. Nē pugnēmus.</i>
		2d person.	Nōlī (plu. nōlīte) with present infinitive. <i>Do not fight. Nōlīte pugnāre.</i> ²
		3d person.	Nē with subjunctive. <i>Let them not fight. Nē purgent.</i>

¹ Compare § 692 and *a*.

² **Nē pugnēs**, or **Nē pugnāte** — old Latin.

497.

VOCABULARY

a'deō, -ī're, -ī (-īvī), -itus, *go to, approach, visit* (followed by the accusative).

crē'dō, -ere, crē'didī, crē'ditus, *trust, believe.*

e'ō, ī're, ī'ī (-ī'vī), itū'rus, *go.*

ex'eō, -ī're, -ī'ī (-ī'vī), -itus, *go out, withdraw.*

lo'quor, lo'quī, locū'tus sum, *say, speak.*

pā'reō, -ē're, pā'ruī, —, *obey.*

pla'ceō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *please.*

resi'stō, -ere, re'stitī, —, *resist,*

oppose.

ser'viō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, *to be slave to, serve.*

498. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

credit

loquacious

resist

placid

RULE

499. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. — Many verbs meaning to *benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command*¹ or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, *believe* or *distrust*, *persuade*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, and the like, take the dative.

Believe me. **Mihi crēde.**

He persuaded the soldiers. **Militibus persuāsit.**

EXERCISES ON COMMANDS

500. *Translate :*

(a) 1. **Ī.** 2. **Pārē mihi.** 3. **Servīte, servī, dominīs.**
4. **Nōlī putāre mē tibi restitisse.** 5. **Domum eāmus.**

(b) 1. **Crēdite mihi.** 2. **Resiste malīs comitibus.** 3. **Affer mihi litterās.** 4. **Verbō amīcī, Cicerō, crēde.** 5. **Sī mānsissent, cōpiīs hostium restitissent.**

501. (a) 1. Girls, remain at home. 2. Let us speak about the things which we hear. 3. Children, obey your mothers. 4. Soldiers, send hostages to the victor. 5. Friends, do not surrender to the Germans.

¹ **Iubeō** takes the accusative, as subject of a following infinitive.

(b) 1. Throw the heavy stones against the wall. 2. Soldiers, march to the nearest town and bring a supply of grain quickly to the army. 3. Let us go to Rome. 4. Boys, for the sake of your honor, resist evil companions. 5. My brave friend, fear nothing, and do not run from danger.

EXERCISES

502. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun:*

(a) 1. *Ībimus Rōmā.* 2. *Nōbīs imperāvit ut rēgī servīrēmus.* 3. *Dīxērunt facile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.*¹ 4. *Militibus imperat ut in proelium eant.* 5. *Omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque, quae adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, castra posuērunt.*

(b) 1. *Rūmōribus audītīs, imperiō rēgis restitimus.* 2. *Legiō, cum in proelium fortiter īsset, hostibus nōn diūtissimē restitit.* 3. *Maiōrī tamen partī placuit castra dēfendere.*¹ 4. *Sī mihi imperāvisset nē verbum loquerer, eī pāruišem.* 5. *Cīvitātī persuāsīt, ut dē finibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.*

503. *Translate:*

(a) 1. If they had trusted me, they would not have gone. 2. The defenders received many wounds while defending their native land. 3. If the towers were higher, we could resist the enemy better. 4. Although they believe us, they will not obey us. 5. If you should go at daybreak, it would please me.

(b) 1. Servants, obey your masters as well as possible. 2. We know that you have approached the bank of the river. 3. The general, having been warned of the danger, led his forces into camp. 4. When he has seized the royal power, he will send some men from the city, and others he will kill. 5. The left wing of the army approached the enemy's line of battle as bravely as possible.

¹ Infinitive used as a substantive.

LESSON LXIII

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ. DATIVE OF PURPOSE

*Fere libenter homines id quod volunt credunt. — Men willingly believe that which they wish.**

504. Learn the conjugation of volō, nōlō, mālō, § 592.

505. Syntax of volō, nōlō, mālō. — The infinitive with subject accusative is used after volō, nōlō, mālō when its subject is not the same as that of the governing verb. When the subject of both verbs is the same, the complementary infinitive is used.¹

I wish you to go. Volō tē ire.

I wish to go. Volō ire.

506.

VOCABULARY

difficul'tās, -tā'tis, f., difficulty.

hi'ems, hi'emis, f., winter, stormy weather.

re'giō, -ō'nis, f., region, boundary, district.

subsi'dium, subsi'dī, n., aid.

mā'lō, māl'le, māl'luī, prefer.

nō'lō, nōl'le, nō'luī, be unwilling.

occī'dō, -ere, -cī'dī, -cī'sus, kill, slay.

pel'lō, -ere, pe'pulī, pul'sus, drive out, put to flight, defeat.

vo'lō, vel'le, vo'luī, be willing, wish.

507. What Latin words do the following suggest?

voluntary

expel

region

volitive

* Caesar.

¹ Compare § 694 and α.

RULE

508. Dative of Purpose. — A dative expressing purpose is used with **sum** and a few other verbs.

The legion served as aid to Caesar. **Legiō auxiliō Caesarī fuit.**

He sent men as aid to the army. **Virōs subsidiō exercituī mīsit.**

(a) Here **auxiliō** and **subsidiō** are dative of purpose.

EXERCISES

509. Translate:

(a) 1. Vult hostēs pellere. 2. Deō volente, Rōmae tē videbimus. 3. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō. 4. Volō tē tuō patrī placitūrum esse. 5. Māluerāmus cōpiās vestrās auxiliō nōbīs et nostrō exercituī ventūrās esse.

(b) 1. Decima legiō Caesarī subsidiō erat. 2. Caesar nōluit legiōnēs auxiliō Aeduīs mittere. 3. Hīs facile pulsīs, incredibilī celeritāte ad flūmen cucurrerunt. 4. Caesar memoriā tenēbat cōsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum. 5. Obsidibus cūstōdēs praeponit, ut, quae agant, quibuscum¹ loquantur, scīre possit.

510. Translate:

(a) 1. We were willing to fight longer for our country. 2. Caesar had been unwilling to send the tenth legion as aid for Galba. 3. If I had preferred to remain at home, I should not have gone with you. 4. He thought it would not be difficult to slay the enemy. 5. Obey your leader, fight bravely.

(b) 1. Caesar could not engage in battle on account of the stormy weather. 2. If I believed your words, I would not delay my departure. 3. When we wished you to approach the regions of the Germans, we could see no difficulty. 4. We wish to defend these regions with towers of such height. 5. Caesar remained in camp ten days that the remaining cavalry might come as aid to him.

¹ **Cum** is often appended to a pronoun as an enclitic.

LESSON LXIV

SEMI-DEPONENTS. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

Gaudeamus igitur iuvenes dum sumus. — Let us rejoice, then, while we are young.

511. Semi-deponents are verbs which have the *present system* in the active voice and the *perfect system* in the passive voice, but both with the active meaning.

au'deō, -ē're, au'sus sum, *dare*.

gau'deō, -ē're, gāvī'sus sum, *rejoice*.

so'leō, -ē're, so'litus sum, *be wont*.

fī'dō, fī'dere, fī'sus sum, *trust*.

512.

VOCABULARY

au'deō, -ē're, au'sus sum, *dare*.

clas'sis, -is (-ium), f., a *fleet*.

cō'gō, -ere, coē'gī, coāc'tus, *collect, compel*.

conve'niō, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ven'tus, *assemble*.

conven'tus, -ūs, m., *assembly, meeting*.

ēdo'ceō, -ē're, ēdo'cuī, ēdoc'tus, *show, inform, instruct*.

fī'ō, fī'erī, fac'tus sum, *become, be made, happen*. Learn the conjugation, § 595.

trāns'eō, -ī're, -ī'vī (-īī) -itus, *go across*.

īn'struō, -ere, -strū'xī, -strūc'tus, *draw up, construct*.

prōgre'dior, -ī, -gres'sus sum, *advance*.

Ve'netī, -ō'rum, m., *Veneti*.

513. What Latin words do the following suggest?

audacious

transitive

instruct

progress

RULE

514. Dative of Possessor. — The dative is used with *sum* to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.

The boy has a book. Puerō liber est.

Cicero's name was Marcus Tullius. Cicerōnī nōmen erat Mārcus Tullius.

EXERCISES

515. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Virō erat pulcherrima domus. 2. Nōnne hieme in mare ire ausus es? 3. Impetus in eōs fit sed eīs nūllus timor est. 4. Fortis vir praeerat eīs cīvitātibus ex quibus exercitum coēgerat. 5. Brūtum adulēscētem classī nāvisque, quās convenīre iusserat, praeficit et in Venetōs eum proficīscī iubet.

(b) 1. Quaerit ex eō sōlō quae in conventū dīxerit. 2. Mīlitibus multa tēla erant. 3. Huic magnīs dōnīs persuādet ut ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. 4. Proximō diē Caesar ē castrīs cōpiās suās ēdūxit et paulum ā castrīs prōgressus, aciem instrūxit. 5. Nōlite id velle quod fierī nōn potest.

516. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The manners of my pupils please me much. 2. The Veneti had very many ships. 3. They informed the Veneti that they wished to assemble near the shore. 4. They went across the river and led the army among the enemy. 5. The leader dares to advance to the regions of the enemy and is asking about the character of the people.

(b) 1. Caesar drew up a line of battle on the top of the hill. 2. Other forces were sent as aid to Caesar. 3. They had set out in the winter and two thousand of their men had been slain. 4. Citizens, trust the defenders of your country. 5. The soldier had great courage and he became leader of the enemy.

LESSON LXV

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

*Crescit eundo. — It grows as it goes.**

517. The **Gerund** is a *verbal noun*. It is formed by the present stem + **nd** (or **end**) + neuter endings of the second declension. It is found in the genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, singular only; **portandī**, **portandō**, **portandum**, **portandō**.

518. The **Gerundive** is a *verbal adjective*.¹ It is formed by the present stem + **nd** (or **end**) + endings of **magnus**; **portandus**, **-a**, **-um**.

519. **Gerund and Gerundive Uses.** — The gerund may take a direct object. When it would have an object, the gerundive is generally used instead, the object taking the case of the gerund and the gerundive agreeing with the object as an adjective.

Desirous of seeking peace. **Cupidus pācem petendī** (gerund). **Cupidus pācis petendae** (gerundive construction).

We have hope of conquering the enemy. **Habēmus spem vincendī hostēs** (gerund). **Habēmus spem vincendōrum hostium** (gerundive construction).

* The motto of New Mexico. Literally: *By going*.

¹ An easy way to distinguish gerund and gerundive is to think that "the gerundive is an adjective."

520.

VOCABULARY

adver'sus, -a, -um, *turned toward, facing, face to face.*

commeā'tus, -ūs, m., *supplies, provisions.*

hīber'na, -ō'rum, n., *winter quarters.*

por'tus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

praesi'dium, **praesi'dī**, n., *guard, garrison, protection.*

sa'lūs, -ū'tis, f., *safety.*

effi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, *accomplish, bring about.*

clau'dō, -ere, **clau'sī**, **clau'sus**, *shut, close.*

occur'rō, -ere, -cur'rī, -cur'sus, *meet.*

prox'imē, adv., *next, most recently.*

521. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

hibernate

adverse

occur

efficient

RULE

522. **The Expression of Purpose.** — The most common ways of expressing purpose are:

1. Subjunctive with **ut**. **Vēnērunt ut urbem vidērent.** *They came to see the city.*

2. Subjunctive with relative pronoun. **Vēnērunt quī urbem vidērent.**

3. Gerundive construction with **ad**. **Vēnērunt ad urbem videndam.**

4. Gerundive construction with **causā**. **Vēnērunt urbis videndae causā.**

(a) In Latin prose purpose *can not* be expressed by the infinitive.

EXERCISES

523. *Express the purpose in four ways:*

1. They went to close the gates.
2. We have teachers to instruct us.
3. Soldiers go into battle to slay the enemy.
4. Caesar came to conquer Gaul.
5. Will you hasten to meet the guard?

524. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. Militēs pugnandī finem fēcērunt. 2. Ad pācem petendam cotīdiē vērērunt. 3. Nautae in portum salūtis

petendae causā contendunt. 4. Nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt. 5. Efficiēbat ut commeātūs ab Aeduīs et reliquīs cīvitātibus sine periculō ad sē portārī possent.

(b) 1. Paucae rēs praesidiō hibernīs erunt. 2. Timuit nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret. 3. Ad eōs dēfendendōs undique conveniunt. 4. Duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscrip̄tae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentīs erant. 5. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant.

525. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Each advanced for the sake of crossing the river. 2. We were informed that the war ships had assembled, and we went into winter quarters to seek safety. 3. The Romans had very many captives. (*Express in two ways.*) 4. I was unwilling to meet you. 5. The captives resisted the victors very often.

(b) 1. We thought that Cicero, after calling the senate together, had dismissed it. 2. I asked him what he was doing. 3. The gates were closed, and a garrison being left at the camp, we sent men in different directions to seek supplies. 4. The leaders will show how great a number of war ships has been collected. 5. They met the cavalry half way up the hill, but did not dare to advance to the attack.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

526. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Salūtis causā. 2. Hōc proeliō nūntiātō. 3. Hīs rēbus gestīs. 4. Magnō numerō interfectō. 5. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs.

LESSON LXVI

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

*Ad captandum vulgus. — To catch the crowd.**

527. The **Active Periphrastic Conjugation** denotes impending action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with forms of **sum**. The present of **sum** is used for the present tense, the imperfect for the imperfect, the present infinitive for the present infinitive, etc. The participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

Caesar was about to announce the battle. **Caesar proelium nūtiātūrus erat.**

The Romans had intended to fight. **Rōmānī pugnātūrī fuerant.**

We thought the enemy would come. **Exīstimāvimus hostēs ventūrōs esse.**

(a) Conjugate **scribō** through the Active Periphrastic.

528. The **Passive Periphrastic** denotes necessity or that which ought to be done. It is formed by combining the gerundive with forms of **sum**. The gerundive agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

The soldiers must be sent. **Militēs mittendī sunt.**

The signal must be given. **Signum dandum est.**

(a) Conjugate **scribō** through the Passive Periphrastic.

* Compare "to play to the gallery."

529.

VOCABULARY

facul'tās, -tā'tis, f., *opportunity, ability.*

tempes'tās, -tā'tis, f., *storm, bad weather.*

ar'bitror, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *think.*

cohor'tor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *encourage.*

sta'tuō, -ere, -uī, -ū'tus, *determine, decide.*

magno'pere, (magis, maximē), *adv., greatly.*

prop'ter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*

sta'tim, adv., *immediately.*

530. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

tempest

exhort

arbitrate

faculty

RULE

531. Dative of Agent. — With the Passive Periphrastic the dative is used to denote the agent or doer of the action.

*You must give the signal. Signum tibi dandum est.*¹

Caesar must announce the battle, or The battle must be announced by Caesar. Proelium Caesarī nūntiandum est.

EXERCISES

532. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum. 2. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 3. Magnopere tibi placitūrī fuerāmus. 4. Acīēs instruenda et mīlītēs cohortandī erant. 5. Hīs rēbus adductī scīvīmus hīberna Gallōrum nōbīs capiēda esse.

(b) 1. Adversō exercitūī occurrunt. 2. Prō rē publicā fortiter pugnātūrī sumus. 3. Propter tempestātēs difficultās nāvigandī maxima est. 4. Arbitrātī sumus commeātum ad hīberna statim mittendum esse. 5. Dēfessō mīlītī eius locī, ubi fuerat, relinquendī et suī recipiendī facultās nōn dabātur.

¹ Notice that all sentences in the active voice must be recast before they can be expressed literally by the Passive Periphrastic.

533. Translate:

(a) 1. The gates must often be closed by us for the sake of safety. 2. I had intended to give you a better opportunity of seeing the beautiful buildings at Rome. 3. Private citizens, be an aid to the king. 4. The general set out late in the day to encourage the garrison. 5. Our forces must be sent across the wide river, the town of the enemy must be burned, and their children taken as hostages.



The Temple of Apollo in Pompeii.

(b) 1. The Romans had no good ports. (*Two ways.*) 2. We did not dare to meet the Veneti on account of the stormy weather, and took the opportunity of retreating into port. 3. Having been greatly influenced by the reports which he had heard, Caesar determined that he must leave the winter quarters immediately. 4. Having advanced many miles, we met the Veneti face to face. 5. They had been informed that they must drive the enemy from their boundaries immediately.

LESSON LXVII

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Nīl desperandum.—*Never despair.**

534. An **Impersonal Verb**¹ is one which has no personal subject; it is used in the third person singular only: **Licet, -ēre, licuit, it is permitted. Pluit, it rains.**

1. Verbs that have a clause or an infinitive as subject are called impersonal verbs.

It happened that the night was long. Accidit ut esset nox longa.

It is permitted the soldier to do that thing. Id militi facere licet.

2. Intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in the passive.

Fighting is carried on. Pugnātur.

He (they, etc.) came, (literally) it was come. Ventum est.

535.

VOCABULARY

ac'cidō, -ere, ac'cidī, fall, hap-
pen, (impersonal) it happens.

li'cet, -ē're, -uit, (impers. with
dat.) it is permitted.

lū'na, -ae, f., moon.

plē'nus, -a, -um, full.

vel, conj., or; vel . . . vel, either
. . . or.

prōvi'deō, -ēre, -vī'dī, -vī'sus,
provide.

536. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

lunatic

accident

plenipotentiary

illicit

* Horace. Literally: *Nothing ought to be despaired of.*

¹ Compare § 682.

EXERCISES

537. *Translate, explaining the use of each infinitive and subjunctive:*

(a) 1. Ab hostibus pugnātum erat. 2. Licet nōbīs imperātōrem bonum sequī. 3. Accidit ut lūna plēna esset. 4. Num suōs sēcum servōs sunt in urbem ductūrī? 5. Dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū erat prōvīsum.

(b) 1. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. 2. Licet nōbīs bellum cum Germānīs gerere. 3. Dēditiōne factā, obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum esse exīstimāvit. 4. Quemque domum revertī, optimum vidētur. 5. Pugnātum ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut¹ ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis pugnārī dēbuit.

538. *Translate:*

(a) 1. It happens that we see a full moon. 2. Caesar must not tell who has been conquered. 3. They had two hundred buildings. (*Express two ways.*) 4. Fighting will be carried on long and fiercely. 5. It was permitted the garrison to retreat into the town and close the gates.

(b) 1. To promise great things is easy. 2. I showed what must be done that day. 3. The full moon could be seen. 4. It was permitted us to collect a fleet. 5. Caesar will provide aid for the city.

VIRGINĒS VESTĀLĒS

539. Vesta dea erat Rōmānōrum, quae ignī focōque praeerat. Rōmae fuit Vestae Templum, quō in templō sex virginēs Vestālēs sacrum ignem continenter cūstōdiēbant.

Sex annōs nātae virginēs hōc ministeriō fungī incēperunt, ā Pontifice Maximō dēlēctae. Trīgintā annōs officiīs in templō fūntae sunt, tum aut templum relinquere aut manēre ibi eīs

¹ As, see general vocabulary.

licuit. Virginēs Vestālēs maximō in honōre ā populō Rōmānō habitae sunt.

Vestālēs sacrum ignem cūstōdīverunt et cum perīculum esset eum ad locum tūtum portāverunt. Nōnumquam Rōmā ignem extulērunt, nē in hostium manūs venīret.

Rōmānī putāverunt Vestam in Italiā prīmō esse ab Aenēā cultam, et eum prīmum virginēs Vestālēs dēlēgisse.



A Vestal Virgin.

LESSON LXVIII

REVIEW OF CASES¹

Bis dat qui cito dat. — He gives twice who gives quickly.

540. Nominative { Subject of a Finite Verb. § 15.
 Predicate Noun. § 28.
541. Genitive { Possession. § 27.
 Of the Whole. § 260.
 Description or Quality. § 441.
 Definite Measurement. § 441, a.
542. Dative { Indirect Object. § 56.
 After adjectives meaning *like, unlike, equal, unequal, and near.* § 230.
 With Adjectives meaning *dear, faithful, friendly, suitable, useful, etc.* § 269.
 With verbs compounded with { *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, circum.* § 419.
 With Intransitive Verbs meaning *benefit or injure, please or displease, command or obey, serve or resist, believe or distrust, persuade, pardon, envy, threaten, be angry, and the like.* § 499.
 Agent with Passive Periphrastic. § 531.
 Possessor with *sum.* § 514.
 Of Purpose. § 508.

¹ The forms may be reviewed as the teacher sees fit.

EXERCISES

543. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun and pronoun:*¹

(a) 1. Militibus Caesaris pugnandum est. 2. Maior sorōrum ab omnibus pulchrior habebātur. 3. Caesarī id nūntiatum est. 4. Imperātor militibus imperāvit ut fortiter resisterent. 5. In mūrō standi potestās erat nulli.

(b) 1. Erat fossa ducentōrum pedum in longitudinem. 2. Belgis bellum intulērunt. 3. Hic amicus meus est; ille, amicus tuus. 4. Equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī miserant, fortis vir praeerat. 5. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explorātōrēs centuriōnēsq̄ue praemittit, quī locum idōneum castris dēligant.

544. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The Germans did not have large horses. (*Two ways.*) 2. The Belgians say that they are the bravest of all. 3. The fleet was sent as a protection to the city. 4. We met the girls in the road. 5. We must take the opportunity not only of burning the buildings but also of destroying the grain.

(b) 1. They did not dare to resist the enemy. 2. For the sake of safety they made a wall of ten feet in height. 3. Let us persuade the enemy to surrender. 4. The men were like their leader in character. 5. He will order the lieutenant to send soldiers as aid to our men.

¹ In these review lessons consult the general vocabulary for new words.

LESSON LXIX

REVIEW OF CASES

Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem.— *With the sword she seeks calm repose in freedom.**

545.	{ Adverbial. § 382.
Accu- sative	{ Direct Object. § 16.
	{ Duration of Time and Extent of Space. § 286.
	{ Place <i>into, to, toward, near</i> which. § 76.
	{ Subject of an Infinitive. § 307.
	{ With prepositions. § 333.
546.	{ Absolute. § 463.
Abla- tive	{ Accompaniment with <i>cum</i> . § 102.
	{ After a Comparative with <i>quam</i> omitted. § 221.
	{ Agent with a preposition. § 140.
	{ Cause without a preposition. § 195.
	{ Degree of Difference. §§ 247, 383.
	{ Manner with or without <i>cum</i> . § 114.
	{ Means or instrument. § 65.
	{ Place <i>in, from, out of</i> which. § 76.
	{ Quality. § 441.
	{ Specification without a preposition. § 204.
	{ Separation with or without a preposition. § 316.
	{ Time when without a preposition. § 147.
	{ With prepositions. § 332.
	{ With verbs <i>utor, fruor</i> , etc. § 375.

* The motto of Massachusetts.

547.

Loca- { Place in or at which with names of cities and
tive { towns, *domus*, and *rūs*. § 278.

548. **Vocative.** — The vocative is used as the case of address. § 494, *a*.

EXERCISES

549. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun and pronoun:*

(*a*) 1. Plūrimum inter eōs Rōmānōs et virtūte et hominum numerō posse sciēbant. 2. His verbīs audītis, eum ab sē dīmittit. 3. Haec rēs latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat. 4. Galbam cum sex cohortibus praesidiō legiōnibus reliquit. 5. Ab hīs castrīs vir, Galba nōmine, magnā cum celeritāte octō mīlia passuum iit.

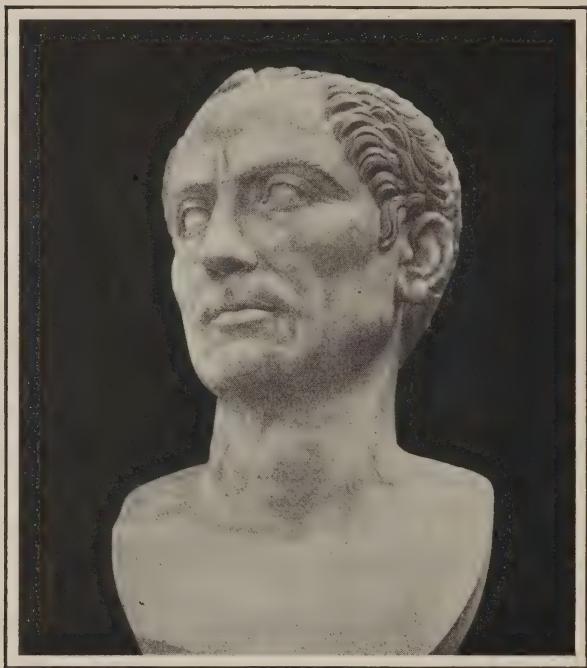
(*b*) 1. Dux summā virtūte ad bellum ā Caesare mittētur. 2. Mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī vēnerant, eōs auxiliō urbī mīsīt. 3. Decem diēbus ante Galba mūrū dēfēnsōribus nūdāverat. 4. Venetī multō potentiōrēs hostibus erant. 5. Manēre Rōmae est facillimum.

550. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Friends, do not surrender to the Germans. 2. The citizens at Rome wished to please their king. 3. The large animals ran out of the woods at daybreak and remained near the town all day. 4. Let us use our javelins and deprive the city of its defenders. 5. If the leader orders you will set out.

(*b*) 1. Marcus, surpass the enemy in courage. 2. Caesar was informed that the top of the mountain was held by the enemy. 3. Caesar with his brave men stormed the town with great courage. 4. We followed the cavalry five miles

and fought much more bravely than they. 5. After the gates had been closed, a message was sent to the general who was attacking the town.



Julius Caesar.

From a bust in Naples.

LESSON LXX

REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVES

Palmam qui meruit ferat. — *Let him who deserves it reap the reward.**

Subjunc- tive	551.	{ Causal Clauses. § 471.
		{ Circumstantial Clauses. § 470.
		{ Concessive Clauses. § 472.
		{ Conditional Clauses. §§ 478–482.
		{ Indirect Questions. § 402.
		{ Purpose. § 353.
		{ Result. § 379.
		{ Volitive. § 348.

EXERCISES

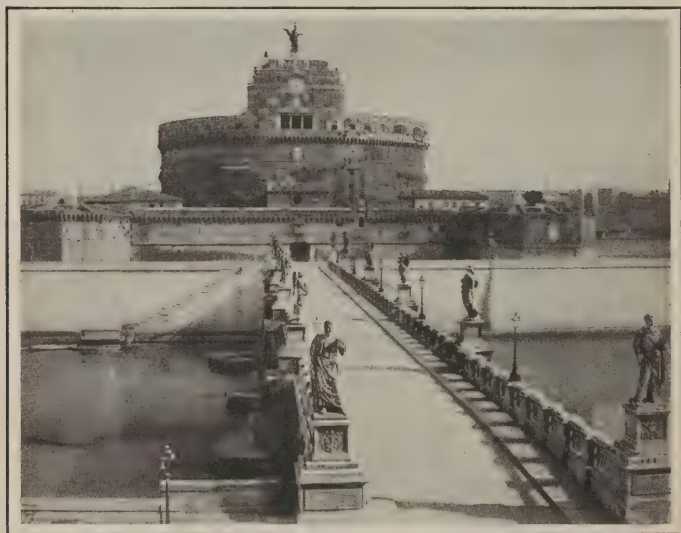
552. *Translate, explaining each subjunctive:*

- (a) 1. Nōlīte iūdicāre nē iūdicēminī. 2. Quid ēgerīs sciō.
3. Caesar, cum aciem instrūxisset, legiōnibus signum dedit.
4. Cum domī meae paene interfectus essem, senātum convocāvī.
5. Sī facultās militibus data esset, ācerrimē pugnāre ausī essent.
(b) 1. Cum ā tertiā hōrā ad sōlis occāsum pugnātum esset,
tamen cōpiæ victæ sunt. 2. Cum nōbīs liceat in portum ire,
quam vëlōcissimē nāvīgēmus. 3. Tantīs periculīs occurrit
ut salūtis causā fugiat. 4. Dux timet ut militēs in hostēs quam
plūrima pīla iaciant. 5. Sī militēs cohortēris, fortius pugnent.

* The motto of Lord Nelson, the victor of Trafalgar. Literally: *Let him who merits bear the palm.*

553. *Translate:*

(a) 1. He saw in how great peril the camp was. 2. They surrender to Caesar, since he is very powerful. 3. When Cicero saw the danger, he tried to save the state. 4. He sent a man to enlist two legions. 5. Caesar commanded us to bring the hostages back.



The Tomb of Emperor Hadrian at Rome.

(b) 1. Since their fleet had been taken, they could not defend themselves. 2. Let us not send the Gauls under the yoke. 3. Although we do not understand the movements of the stars, nevertheless it pleases us to see them. 4. If the enemy had been braver, they would not have sought peace. 5. The army was so powerful that it could not be taken.

LESSON LXXI

REVIEW OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Finis coronat opus.—The end crowns the work.

554. In **Indirect Discourse** a statement is expressed by the infinitive; questions, commands, and subordinate clauses, by the subjunctive.

If the verb introducing the Indirect Discourse is in a principal tense, the subjunctives are generally in principal tenses; if it is historical, the subjunctives are generally historical. See § 364.

DIRECT

Statement: *Labor was difficult.*

Labor difficilis erat.

Question: *Why do you come into my domain?*

Cūr in meās possessiōnēs venīs?

Command: *Return to me.*

Ad mē revertiminī.

Subordinate clause: *They went because they had been sent.*

Īvērunt quod missī erant.

INDIRECT

He said that labor had been difficult.

Dīxit labōrem difficilem fuisse.

Ariovistus responded to Caesar: Why did he come into his domain.

Ariovistus Caesarī respondit:

Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret.

He replied to the ambassadors that they should return to him.

Lēgātīs respondit, ad sē reverterentur.

They said that they had gone because they had been sent.

Dīxērunt sē īsse quod missī essent.

EXERCISES

555. *Translate, explaining the use of all subjunctives:*

1. Lēgātīs respondit, sī quid vellent, ad sē reverterentur.
2. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs (esse) atque ibi futūrōs

(esse) *Helvētiōs*, ubi *Caesar* cōstituisset atque esse voluisset. 3. A quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: *Germānōs* neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacesantur, quā armīs contendant, quod *Germānōrum* cōsuētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. 4. Haec tamen dicere, vērnisse invitōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse iīs utilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possederint; sēsē ūnīs *Suēbīs* concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint.



The Colosseum at Rome.

While stands the Colosseum, Rome shall stand,
When falls the Colosseum, Rome shall fall,
And when Rome falls — the World.

— BYRON, *Childe Harold*.

APPENDIX

ENGLISH AND LATIN

AN ENGLISH-LATIN LETTER

556. Few students realize how constantly Latin enters into almost everything they do. The following was written by a business man — a firm believer in Latin — to illustrate this fact to a doubting pupil.

“Latin is a great help in everything we study. In Book-keeping, it is much easier to understand *debit* and *credit* if we know their derivation; in Algebra, it shows us without a rule the difference between *identity* and *equation*; in Geometry, Q. E. D. (*quod erat demonstrandum*) is much easier to say than *which was to be proven*. In Botany, Agriculture, and nearly all the Sciences, most of the names come from the Latin (or Greek), while it is impossible to get so much out of History and German without Latin, as with it.

“But in English — the most everyday practical study of all — Latin helps us most. We cannot get away from it. If we know Latin, we never misspell *separate*, *preparation*, *precedence*, *laudable*, and so on. Consciously or unconsciously we use it all the time, not only indirectly in fully half the words we speak or write, but directly as well. We see a football poster:

High School *versus* Academy

Game called at 3 P.M.

Do we know the italicized words? In the game only *bona*

fide students are allowed to play; others are unfit to represent our *Alma Mater*. We go to the game and pay our money (which has *e pluribus unum* stamped on it) to the manager, who is *ex officio* gate-keeper. Our team beats the other (or *vice versa*) and the captain makes an *ex tempore* speech. We pretend the other team is dead, and we hold a *post mortem* celebration, parading the streets with a big banner with a *fac-simile* of the rival school marked *In Memoriam* and *Requiescat in Pace*.

"If the principal opposes athletics, we may argue *pro* and *con(tra)*, urging a *referendum* to the students. A single *lapsus linguae* may spoil our case *in toto*. We may use an effective *a priori* argument, or say there is *prima facie* evidence that football is a good thing; but if we fail to make our point, things remain *in statu quo*, the principal gives his *ultimatum*, and we make our *exit*.

"And so I could go on *ad infinitum* by talking of *fiat* money, *ad valorem* tariff duties, *ex post facto* laws, and *ante bellum* days, when the *per capita* income of the country was less *per annum* than it is now. But you ought to be studying your Latin, instead of reading this about it, so I will stop."

LATIN IN SCIENCE

557. Below are given a few of the Latin words in science and mathematics.

Agriculture : agriculture, horticulture, floriculture, arable, cereal, biennial, perennial, stamen, corolla, calyx, fungus.

Biology : animal, quadruped, centipede, nares, pelvis, pectus, vertebra, tibia, femur, digit, cuticle, antennae, pulmonary, maxilla, mammal.

Mathematics : plus, minus, exponent, coefficient, transpose, subtract, subtrahend, minuend, dividend, divisor, multiplicand, multiplier, decimal, unit, radius, digit, radical.

STATE MOTTOES

558. Many States have Latin mottoes some of which have already appeared in the Lessons.

Ad astra per aspera	Kansas
Animis opibusque parati dum spiro spero .	South Carolina
Cedant arma togae	Wyoming
Crescit eundo	New Mexico
Dirigo	Maine
Ditat Deus	Arizona
E pluribus unum	United States
Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem .	Massachusetts
Excelsior	New York
Justitia omnibus	District of Columbia
Montani semper liberi	West Virginia
Nil sine numine	Colorado
Qui transtulit sustinet	Connecticut
Regnant populi	Arkansas
Salve	Idaho
Salus populi suprema lex esto	Missouri
Scuto bonae voluntatis tuae coronasti nos .	Maryland
Si quaeris peninsulam amoenam circumspice .	Michigan
Sic semper tyrannis	Virginia

LATIN WORDS IN THE CONSTITUTION

559. Note the large proportion of words derived from the Latin.¹

Preamble to the Constitution

We, the people of the *United States*, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, secure

¹ Selections from English Classics with which the student is familiar may be treated in the same way.

the blessings of *liberty* to ourselves and our *posterity*, do *ordain* and *establish* this *constitution* for the *United States* of America.

LATIN PHRASES

560. Below is a partial list of familiar Latin phrases, some of which have already appeared in the mottoes of the lessons.

Ad finem	Excelsior
Ad infinitum	Exeunt
Ad modum	Exit
Ad nauseam	Ex officio
Ad referendum	Ex post facto
Ad valorem	Ex tempore
Alias	Ex voto
Alibi	Facsimile
Alma Mater	Fiat
Alter ego	Fiat lux
Ante bellum	Gloria in excelsis
Aqua vitae	Habeas corpus
Bona fide	In armis
Carthago delenda est	In esse
Cave canem	In extremis •
Ceteris paribus	Infra dignitatem (infra dig.)
Corpus Christi	In memoriam
De gustibus non disputandum	In pace
De novo	In posse
Deo, amicis, patriae	In situ
Deo volente <i>or</i> Volente deo	In statu quo
Deus vobiscum	Inter nos
Dramatis personae	In toto
Dux femina facti	Ipsē dixit
Ecce homo	Ipsō facto
E pluribus unum	Ita lex scripta est
	Labor omnia vincit

Lapsus linguae	Pro bono publico
Lapsus memoriae	Pro et con
Lares et Penates	Pro rata
Laus Deo	Pro tempore
Lex non scripta	Quid nunc
Lex terrae	Requiescat in pace
Mea culpa	Res gestae
Mens sana in corpore sano	Semper fidelis
Meum et tuum	Sine die
Mirabile dictu	Sine dubio
Modus operandi	Sine qua non
Morituri salutamus	Sui generis
Multum in parvo	Summum bonum
Ne plus ultra	Te Deum laudamus
Nolens volens	Tempus fugit
Non compos mentis	Terra firma
Nulli secundus	Una voce
Omnia ad Dei gloriam	Ultimatum
Pater noster	Vade mecum
Pater patriae	Veni, vidi, vici
Pax vobiscum	Versus
Per annum	Via
Per capita	Vice versa
Per diem	Vivat rex
Per se	Vivat res publica
Post mortem	Viva voce
Prima facie	Vox populi, vox Dei

561. ABBREVIATIONS FROM LATIN WORDS

A.D. — Annō Domini	etc. — et cētera
Aet. — Aetātis	i.e. — id est
A.M. — Ante merīdiem;	I.H.S. — In hōc signō;
Artium Magister	Iēsus hominum salvātor
A.U.C. — Ab urbe conditā	I.N.R.I. — Iēsus Nazarēnus
e.g. — exempli grātiā	Rēx Iūdāeōrum

N.B. — Notā bene

P.M. — Post merīdiem

P.S. — Post scriptum

S.F.Q.R. — Senātus Popu-

lusque Rōmānus

vs. — versus.

LATIN QUOTATIONS

562. Quotations from the Latin are constantly met in reading, and in the speech of many people. Below are given some of the best known, many of which have already appeared in the Lessons.

Alea jacta est. — *Caesar at the Rubicon.* The die is cast.

Ave Caesar! Morituri te salutant. — *Gladiators in the Arena.*

Hail Caesar, those about to die salute thee.

Carpe diem. — *Horace.* Seize the opportunity.

Cui bono? — *Cicero.* What's the good? (See § 508.)

Cum grano salis. — *Pliny.* With a grain of salt.

De mortuis nil nisi bonum (bene). — *Diogenes Laertius.* Of the dead nothing but good (should be spoken or said).

Diem perdiidi. — *Titus.* I have lost a day.

Dira necessitas. — *Horace.* Dire necessity.

Disjecta membra. — *Horace.* Scattered members (parts).

Docendo discitur. — *Seneca.* We learn by teaching.

Eheu fugaces anni! — *Horace.* Alas, the fleeting years!

Errare humanum est. — *Seneca.* To err is human.

Factum fieri infectum non potest. — *Terence.* You can't undo what's done.

Facilis descensus Averno. — *Virgil.* The descent to Avernus is easy.

Festina lente. — *Augustus in Suetonius.* Make haste slowly.

Fortes fortuna adjuvat. — *Terence.* Fortune favors the brave.

Finis coronat opus. — *Ovid.* The end crowns the work.

Fortuna caeca est. — *Cicero.* Fortune is blind.

Hinc illae lacrimae. — *Terence.* Hence those tears.

In hoc signo vinces. — *Constantine.* In this sign (the cross) thou wilt conquer.

In medias res. — *Horace*. Into the midst of things.

Ipse dixit. — *Cicero*. He said it himself.

Labor omnia vincit. — *Virgil*. Work conquers everything.

Laudator temporis acti. — *Horace*. A praiser of times gone by.

Licentia poetica. — *Seneca*. Poetic license.

Lupus in fabula. — *Terence*. The wolf in the fable.

In medio tutissimus ibis. — *Ovid*. You will go safest in the middle.

Mens sana in corpore sano. — *Juvenal*. A sound mind in a sound body.

Nec possum tecum vivere, nec sine te. — *Martial*. I can't live with you, nor without you.

Nil homini certum est. — *Ovid*. Nothing is sure to man.

Nomen et omen. — *Plautus*. The name and the portent.

Non omnia possumus omnes. — *Lucilius*. We can't all do everything.

Non omnis moriar. — *Horace*. I shall not wholly perish.

(Astra castra) Numen lumen. — *Motto of Univ. of Wisconsin*.

(The stars my camp) God my light.

Omnia mutantur. — *Ovid*. All things change.

O tempora! O mores! — *Cicero*. Oh the times! Oh the customs!

Pares cum paribus facillime congregantur. — *Cicero*. Birds of a feather flock together.

Per aspera ad astra. — *Seneca*. To the stars through bolts and bars. (Compare § 558.)

Periculum in mora. — *Livy*. Danger in delay.

Potior est, qui prior est. — *Terence*. First come first served, or
The early bird catches the worm.

Quod erat demonstrandum. — *Euclid*. Which was to be proved.

Quot homines, tot sententiae. — *Terence*. As many opinions as people.

Rara avis. — *Horace*. A rare bird.

Requiescat in pace. Let him rest in peace.

Roma aeterna. — *Tibullus*. Rome the eternal.

Semper idem. — *Cicero*. Always the same.

Summa summarum. — *Plautus*. The top of the tops (The height of everything).

Suum cuique. — *Cicero*. To every one his own.

Tempus edax rerum. — *Ovid*. Time, the devourer of (all) things.

Timeo Danaos et dona ferentes. — *Virgil*. I fear the Greeks even when bringing gifts.

Ultima Thule. — *Virgil*. The farthest land.

Vae victis. — *Livy*. Woe to the vanquished!

Vanitas vanitatum et omnia vanitas. — *Ecclesiastes i, 2*. Vanity of vanities, all is vanity.

Veni, vidi, vici. — *Caesar*. I came, saw, conquered.

Vires acquirit eundo. — *Virgil*. It gains strength as it goes.

Virginibus puerisque. — *Horace*. For girls and boys.

Vita brevis, ars longa. — *Hippocrates*. Life is short, art long.

FLEVIT LEPUS PARVULUS

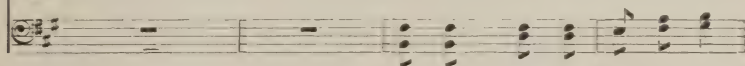
16th Century Student Song



1. Fle - vit le - pus par - vu - lus cla - mans al - tis vo - ci - bus :
2. Ne - que in hor - to fu - i, ne - que o - lus co - me - di.
3. Lon - gas au - res ha - be - o, bre - vem cau - dam te - ne - o.



Quid fe - ci ho - mi - ni - bus, quod me se - quun - tur ca - ni - bus?



Quid fe - ci ho - mi - ni - bus, quod me se - quun - tur ca - ni - bus?



4. Leves pedes habeo, magnum saltum facio. Quid etc.
5. Domus mea silva est, lectus meus durus est. Quid etc.

For new words in the songs on pages 215, 216 and 217, see General Vocabulary.

DIES FESTUS HODIE

C. M. VON WEBER, 1826

1. Tem - pus hoc lae - ti - ti - ae! Di - es fes - tus ho - di - e!
 2. Sti - lus nam et ta - bu - lae Fe - ri - a - les e - pu - lae,
 3. Quic - quid a - gant a - li - i Iu - ve - nes a - me - mus

Om - nes de - bent psal - le - re, Can - ti - le - nas pro - me - re:
 Et Na - so - nis cār - mi - na Vel auc - to - rum pa - gi - na.
 Et cum tur - ba plu - ri - mum Lu - dum ce - le - bre - mus.

DOMINE SALVAM FAC

CHARLES GOUNOD

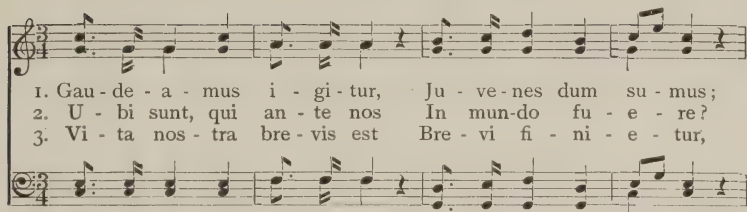
Maestoso
ff

Do - mi - ne, sal - vam fac pa - tri - am nos - tram A - me - ri - cam,

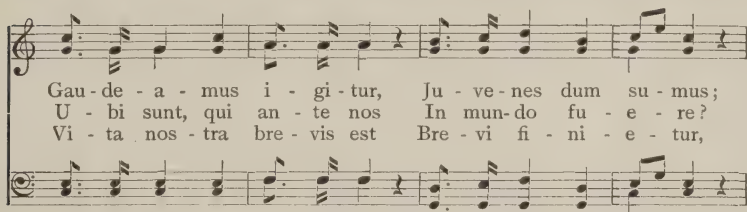
et ex - au - di nos in di - e quā in - vo - ca - ve - ri - mus te.

GAUDEAMUS IGITUR

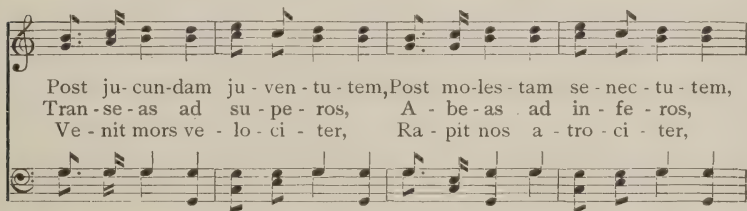
Student Song



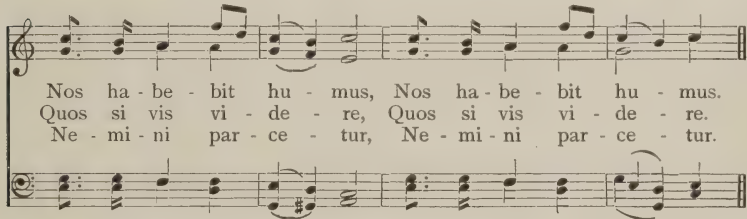
1. Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Ju - ve - nes dum su - mus;
 2. U - bi sunt, qui an - te nos In mun - do fu - e - re?
 3. Vi - ta nos - tra bre - vis est Bre - vi fi - ni - e - tur,



Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Ju - ve - nes dum su - mus;
 U - bi sunt, qui an - te nos In mun - do fu - e - re?
 Vi - ta nos - tra bre - vis est Bre - vi fi - ni - e - tur,



Post ju - cun - dam ju - ven - tu - tem, Post mo - les - tam se - nec - tu - tem,
 Tran - se - as ad su - pe - ros, A - be - as ad in - fe - ros,
 Ve - nit mors ve - lo - ci - ter, Ra - pit nos a - tro - ci - ter,



Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus, Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus.
 Quos si vis vi - de - re, Quos si vis vi - de - re.
 Ne - mi - ni par - ce - tur, Ne - mi - ni par - ce - tur.


4. Alma mater floreat,
 Quæ nos educavit,
 Caros et commilitones,
 Dissitas in regiones
 Sparsos, congregavit.

5. Vivat et re publica
 Et qui illum regit,
 Vivat nostra civitas,
 Mæcenatum caritas,
 Quæ nos hic protegit.

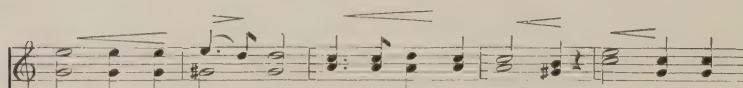
INTEGER VITAE

HORACE, Ode xxii


F. FLEMMING, 1810



1. In - te - ger vi - tæ, sce - le - ris - que pu - ru
 2. Si - ve per Syr - tes i - ter æs - tu - o - sas,
 3. Nam - que me sil - va lu - pus in Sa - bi - na,



Non e - get Mau - ri jac - u - lis nec ar - cu, Nec ve - ne -
 Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi - ta - lem Cau - ca - sum,
 Dum me - am can - to La - la - gen, et ul - tra Ter - mi - num



na - tis gra - vi - da sa - gi - tis, Fus - ce, pha - re - tra.
 vel quæ lo - ca - fa - bu - lo - sus Lam - bit Hy - das - pes.
 cu - ris va - gor ex - pe - di - tis, Fu - git in - er - mem.

The pure in life and free from crime needs no Moorish darts nor bow, nor, my Fuscus, a quiver laden with poisoned arrows, whether he means to journey over the boiling Syrtes, or over the inhospitable Caucasus, or the places laved by storied Hydaspes. For from me, whilst singing my Lalagé in my Sabine wood, and roving beyond its bound with cares cast aside, there fled a wolf, unarmed as I was.

Translated by WILLIAM COUTTS.

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

563.

FIRST DECLENSION

Tuba, *f.*, *trumpet.*

SINGULAR		PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	tuba	tubae
<i>Gen.</i>	tubae ✓	tubārum
<i>Dat.</i>	tubae ✓	tubīs
<i>Acc.</i>	tubam	tubās
<i>Abl.</i>	tubā	tubīs

564.

SECOND DECLENSION

Amicus , <i>m.</i> , <i>friend.</i>	Puer , <i>m.</i> , <i>boy.</i>	Ager , <i>m.</i> , <i>field.</i>	Vir , <i>m.</i> , <i>man.</i>	Bellum , <i>n.</i> , <i>war.</i>
---	--	--	---	--

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	amicus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
<i>Gen.</i>	amicī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
<i>Dat.</i>	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
<i>Acc.</i>	amicum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
<i>Abl.</i>	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	amicī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
<i>Gen.</i>	amicōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	amicīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
<i>Acc.</i>	amicōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
<i>Abl.</i>	amicīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

565.

THIRD DECLENSION

Cōnsul , <i>m.</i> , <i>consul.</i>	Mīles , <i>m.</i> , <i>soldier.</i>	Frāter , <i>m.</i> , <i>brother.</i>	Flūmen , <i>n.</i> , <i>river.</i>
---	---	--	--

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	miles	frāter	flūmen
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulis	militis	frātris	flūminis
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulī	militī	frātrī	flūminī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulem	militem	frātrem	flūmen
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsule	militē	frātre	flūmine

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	militēs	frātrēs	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulū	militū	frātrū	flūminū
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	militibus	frātribus	flūminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	militēs	frātrēs	flūmina
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	militibus	frātribus	flūminibus

Ignis, m.,
fire.

Mare, n.,
sea.

Hostis, m., f.,
enemy.

Urbs, f.,
city.

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	ignis	mare	hostis	urbs
<i>Gen.</i>	ignis	maris	hostis	urbis
<i>Dat.</i>	ignī	marī	hostī	urbī
<i>Acc.</i>	ignem	mare	hostem	urbem
<i>Abl.</i>	ignī, -e	marī	hoste	urbe

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ignēs	maria	hostēs	urbēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ignium	marium	hostium	urbium
<i>Dat.</i>	ignibus	maribus	hostibus	urbibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ignīs, -ēs	maria	hostīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	ignibus	maribus	hostibus	urbibus

566.

FOURTH DECLENSION

Exercitus, m.,
army.

Cornū, n.,
horn.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	exercituū	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercituī	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

567.

FIFTH DECLENSION

	Diēs, m., day.		Rēs, f., thing.	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

568.

IRREGULAR DECLENSIONS

	Deus, m., god.	Dea, f., goddess.	Domus, f., house.	Vīs, f., force, strength.
	SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	deus	dea	domus	vīs
<i>Gen.</i>	deī	deae	domūs, -ī	
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	deae	domuī, -ō	
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	deam	domum	vim
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	deā	domō, -ū	vī
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	deī, diī, dī	deae	domūs	vīrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum, deum	deārum	domuum, -ōrum	vīrium
<i>Dat.</i>	deīs, diīs, dīs	deābus	domibus	vīribus
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	deās	domōs, -ūs	vīrīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	deīs, diīs, dīs	deābus	domibus	vīribus

ADJECTIVES

569.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Bonus, good.

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

570. THIRD DECLENSION — THREE ENDINGS

Ācer, sharp.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (ēs)	ācrīs (ēs)	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

571. THIRD DECLENSION — TWO ENDINGS

Fortis, brave.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte	fortīs (ēs)	fortia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

572. THIRD DECLENSION — ONE ENDING

Potēns, powerful.

SINGULAR

	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	potēns	potēns
<i>Gen.</i>	potentis	potentis
<i>Dat.</i>	potentī	potentī
<i>Acc.</i>	potentem	potēns
<i>Abl.</i>	potentī, -e	potentī, -e

PLURAL

	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	potentēs	potentia
<i>Gen.</i>	potentium	potentium
<i>Dat.</i>	potentibus	potentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	potentēs, -īs	potentia
<i>Abl.</i>	potentibus	potentibus

573. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

Melior, better.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	melior	melius	meliorēs	meliora
<i>Gen.</i>	melioris	melioris	meliorum	meliorum
<i>Dat.</i>	meliorī	meliorī	melioribus	melioribus
<i>Acc.</i>	melio ^r em	melius	meliorēs (īs)	meliora
<i>Abl.</i>	melio ^r e	melio ^r e	melioribus	melioribus

574. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

*Alius, another.**Ūnus, one.*

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	alius	alius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Acc.</i>	alium	aliam	aliud	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

The plural is regular, of the First and Second Declensions.

575. *Duo, two.**Trēs, three.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trīs (trēs)	trīs (trēs)	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

576.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fortis	fortior	fortissimus
vēlōx	vēlōcior	vēlōcissimus
miser	miserior	miserrimus
ācer	ācior	ācerrimus

577.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, <i>good</i>	melior	optimus
malus, <i>bad</i>	peior	pessimus
magnus, <i>great</i>	maior	maximus
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor	minimus
multus, <i>much</i>		plūrimus
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
multī, <i>many</i>	plūrēs	plūrimī
senex, <i>old</i>	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
iuvenis, <i>young</i>	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
idōneus, <i>suitable</i>	magis idōneus	maximē idōneus
exterus, <i>outer</i>	exterior	extrēmus or extimus
inferus, <i>low</i>	inferior	infimus or imus
posterus, <i>hinder</i>	posterior	postrēmus or postumus
superus, <i>high</i>	superior	suprēmus or summus
(cis, citrā)	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus
(in, intrā)	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus
(prae, prō)	prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus
(prope)	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus
(ultrā)	ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus
facilis	facilior	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus
similis	similior	simillimus
dissimilis	dissimilior	dissimillimus
gracilis	gracilior	gracillimus
humilis	humilior	humillimus

578.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>lātē</i> (<i>lātus</i>)	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātissimē</i>
<i>pulchrē</i> (<i>pulcher</i>)	<i>pulchrius</i>	<i>pulcherrimē</i>
<i>miserē</i> (<i>miser</i>)	<i>miserius</i>	<i>miserrimē</i>
<i>fortiter</i> (<i>fortis</i>)	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortissimē</i>
<i>ācriter</i> (<i>ācer</i>)	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
<i>facile</i> (<i>facilis</i>)	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>
<i>bene</i> (<i>bonus</i>)	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male</i> (<i>malus</i>)	<i>peius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>magnopere</i> (<i>magnus</i>)	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
<i>parum</i> (<i>parvus</i>)	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>diū</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>

579.

NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. <i>ūnus</i> , -a, -um	<i>prīmus</i> , -a, -um
2. <i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i>	<i>secundus</i>
3. <i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i>	<i>tertius</i>
4. <i>quattuor</i>	<i>quārtus</i>
5. <i>quīque</i>	<i>quīntus</i>
6. <i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>
8. <i>octō</i>	<i>octāvus</i>
9. <i>novem</i>	<i>nōnus</i>
10. <i>decem</i>	<i>decimus</i>
11. <i>ūndecim</i>	<i>ūndecimus</i>
12. <i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>
13. <i>tredecim</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	<i>quārtus decimus</i>
15. <i>quīndecim</i>	<i>quīntus decimus</i>
16. <i>sēdecim</i>	<i>sextus decimus</i>
17. <i>septendecim</i>	<i>septimus decimus</i>
18. <i>duodēvigintī</i>	<i>duōdēvicēsīmus</i>
19. <i>ūndēvigintī</i>	<i>ūndēvicēsīmus</i>
20. <i>vīgintī</i>	<i>vicēsīmus</i>
21. <i>vīgintī ūnus</i>	<i>vicēsīmus prīmus</i>
(<i>ūnus et vīgintī</i>)	

CARDINALS

29.	ūndētrīgintā
30.	trīgintā
40.	quadrāgintā
50.	quīnquāgintā
60.	sexāgintā
70.	septuāgintā
80.	octōgintā
90.	nōnāgintā
100.	centum
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a
300.	trecentī
400.	quadrīgintī
500.	quīngentī
600.	sescentī
700.	septīgintī
800.	octīgintī
900.	nōngentī
1000.	mille
2000.	duo milia

ORDINALS

ūndētricēsīmus
tricēsīmus
quadrāgēsīmus
quīnquāgēsīmus
sexāgēsīmus
septuāgēsīmus
octōgēsīmus
nōnāgēsīmus
centēsīmus
ducentēsīmus
trecentēsīmus
quadrīgētēsīmus
quīngētēsīmus
sescentēsīmus
septīgētēsīmus
octīgētēsīmus
nōngētēsīmus
millēsīmus
bis millēsīmus

PRONOUNS

580.

PERSONAL

FIRST PERSON

Ego, I.

SECOND PERSON

Tū, you (thou).

THIRD PERSON

**Is, he; ea, she;
id, it.**

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	For declension see § 582.
<i>Nom.</i> ego	nōs	tū	vōs	
<i>Gen.</i> meī	{ nostrum nostrī	tuī	{ vestrum vestrī	
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs	tē	vōs	
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	

581.

REFLEXIVE

FIRST PERSON

Meī, of myself.

SECOND PERSON

Tuī, of yourself (*thyself*).

These are declined like the personal pronoun of the same person, except that they have no nominative.

THIRD PERSON

Suī, of himself, herself, itself.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Gen.</i>	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē

582.

DEMONSTRATIVE

Hīc, *this*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

Ille, *that*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illis	illis

Iste, that, that of yours.**Iipse, self.**

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud		ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius		ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī		ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud		ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō		ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

The plural is regular.

Is, that, he.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id		īi (ī), eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī		īis (īs), eīs	īis (īs), eīs	īis (īs), eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id		eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō		īis (īs), eīs	īis (īs), eīs	īis (īs), eīs

Idem, same.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem		{ Idem (īidem), eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem		īsdem (īīsdem), eīsdem		
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem		eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		īsdem (īīsdem), eīsdem		

583.

RELATIVE

Quī, who, which, that.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod		quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui		quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod		quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō		quibus	quibus	quibus

584

INTERROGATIVE

Quis, who?

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Quī, what, is declined like the relative **quī**.

585.

INDEFINITE

Aliquis, some one.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

The adjective is **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod**.

VERBS

586.

FIRST CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus.**STEMS: **portā-, portāv-, portāt-**.

Active Voice

Passive Voice

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

*I carry, am carrying, etc.**I am carried, etc.*

portō	portāmus	portor	portāmur
portās	portātis	portāris (-re)	portāmini
portat	portant	portātur	portantur

Active Voice

Passive Voice

IMPERFECT

*I carried, was carrying, etc.**I was carried, etc.*

portābam	portābāmus
portābās	portābātis
portābat	portābant

portābar	portābāmur
portābāris (-re)	portābāminī
portābātur	portābantur

FUTURE

*I shall carry, etc.**I shall be carried, etc.*

portābō	portābimus
portābis	portābitis
portābit	portābunt

portābor	portābimur
portāberis (-re)	portābiminī
portābitur	portābuntur

PERFECT

*I have carried, I carried, etc.**I have been (was) carried, etc.*

portāvī	portāvimus
portāvistī	portāvistis
portāvit	portāvērunt (-ēre)

portātus	{ sum	portātī	{ sumus
(-a, -um)	{ es	(-ae, -a)	{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT

*I had carried, etc.**I had been carried, etc.*

portāveram	portāverāmus
portāverās	portāverātis
portāverat	portāverant

portātus	{ eram	portātī	{ erāmus
(-a, -um)	{ erās	(-ae, -a)	{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have carried, etc.**I shall have been carried, etc.*

portāverō	portāverimus
portāveris	portāveritis
portāverit	portāverint

portātus	{ erō	portātī	{ erimus
(-a, -um)	{ eris	(-ae, -a)	{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

portem	portēmus
portēs	portētis
portet	portent

porter	portēmur
portēris (-re)	portēminī
portētur	portentur

Active Voice

Passive Voice

IMPERFECT

portārem	portārēmus	portārer	portārēmur
portārēs	portārētis	portārēris (-re)	portārēmini
portāret	portārent	portārētur	portārentur

PERFECT

portāverim	portāverīmus	portātus	{ sim	portātī	{ sīmus
portāverīs	portāverītis	(-a, -um)	{ sīs	(-ae, -a)	{ sītis
portāverit	portāverint		{ sit		{ sint

PLUPERFECT

portāvissem	portāvissēmus	portātus	{ essem	portātī	{ essēmus
portāvissēs	portāvissētis	(-a, -um)	{ essēs	(-ae, -a)	{ essētis
portāvisset	portāvissent		{ esset		{ essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

*Carry thou, etc.**Be thou carried, etc.*

2d portā portāte

2d portāre portāmini

FUTURE

*Thou shalt carry.**Thou shalt be carried.*

2d portātō portātōte

2d portātor

3d portātō portantō

3d portātor portantor

INFINITIVE

PRES. portāre, *to carry.*portārī, *to be carried.*PERF. portāvisse, *to have carried.*portātus esse, *to have been carried.*FUT. portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry.*portātum irī, *to be about to be carried.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. portāns, -antis, *carrying.*PERF. portātus, -a, -um, *having been carried.*FUT. portātūrus, -a, -um, *about to carry.*

Active Voice

GERUND

- Gen.* portandī, of carrying.
Dat. portandō, for carrying.
Acc. portandum, carrying.
Abl. portandō, by carrying.

Passive Voice

GERUNDIVE

- portandus, -a, -um, to be carried,
 etc.

SUPINE

- Acc.* portātum, to carry.
Abl. portātū, to carry.

587.

SECOND CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.

STEMS: monē-, monu-, monit-.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I advise, warn, etc.

moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

I am advised, warned, etc.

moneor	monēmur
monēris (-re)	monēmini
monētur	monentur

IMPERFECT

I advised, was advising, etc.

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

I was advised, etc.

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris (-re)	monēbāmini
monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE

I shall advise, etc.

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

I shall be advised, etc.

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis (-re)	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PERFECT

*I have advised, etc.**I have been advised, etc.*

monuī	monuimus	monitus (-a, -um)	{ sum es est	monitī (-ae, -a)	{ sumus estis sunt
monuistī	monuistis				
monuit	monuērunt (-ēre)				

PLUPERFECT

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monueram	monuerāmus	monitus (-a, -um)	{ eram erās erat	monitī (-ae, -a)	{ erāmus erātis erant
monuerās	monuerātis				
monuerat	monuerant				

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus (-a, -um)	{ erō eris erit	monitī (-ae, -a)	{ erimus eritis erunt
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris (-re)	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

IMPERFECT

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris (-re)	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT

monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus (-a, -um)	{ sim sīs sit	monitī (-ae, -a)	{ sīmus sītis sint
monuerīs	monuerītis				
monuerit	monuerint				

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PLUPERFECT

monuiss em	monuiss em us	monitus (-a, -um)	{	essem	monitī	{	ess em us
monuiss ēs	monuiss ēt is			ess ēs			ess ēt is
monuisset	monuissent			esset			essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

*Advise thou, etc.**Be thou advised, etc.*

2d monē

monēte

2d monēre

monēmini

FUTURE

*Thou shalt advise, etc.**Thou shalt be advised, etc.*

2d monētō

monētōte

2d monētor

3d monētō

monentō

3d monētor

monentor

INFINITIVE

PRES. monēre, to advise, etc.

monērī, to be advised, etc.

PERF. monuisse, to have advised,
etc.monitus esse, to have been ad-
vised, etc.FUT. monitūrus esse, to be
about to advise, etc.monitum irī, to be about to be ad-
vised, etc.

PARTICIPLES

PRES. monēns, -entis, advising,
etc.PERF. monitus, -a, -um, having
been advised, etc.FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to
advise, etc.

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen. monendī, of advising, etc.

monendus, -a, -um, to be advised,
etc.

Dat. monendō, for advising, etc.

Acc. monendum, advising, etc.

Abl. monendō, by advising, etc.

SUPINE

Acc. monitum, to advise, etc.

Abl. monitū, to advise, etc.

588.

THIRD CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus.

STEMS: dūce-, dūx-, duct-.

Active Voice

Passive Voice

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

*I lead, am leading, etc.**I am led, etc.*

dūcō	dūcimur	dūcor	dūcimur
dūcis	dūcitis	dūceris (-re)	dūciminī
dūcit	dūcunt	dūcitur	dūcuntur

IMPERFECT

*I led, was leading, etc.**I was led, was being led; etc.*

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis	dūcēbāris (-re)	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbat	dūcēbant	dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

FUTURE

*I shall lead, etc.**I shall be led, etc.*

dūcam	dūcēmus	dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris (-re)	dūcēminī
dūcet	dūcent	dūcētur	dūcentur

PERFECT

*I led, have led, etc.**I was led, have been led, etc.*

dūxī	dūximur	ductus (-a, -um)	{ sum es est	ductī (-ae, -a)	{ sumus estis sunt
dūxistī	dūxistis				
dūxit	dūxērunt (-ēre)				

PLUPERFECT

*I had led, etc.**I had been led, etc.*

dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus (-a, -um)	{ eram erās erat	ductī (-ae, -a)	{ erāmus erātis erant
dūxerās	dūxerātis				
dūxerat	dūxerant				

Active Voice

Passive Voice

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have led, etc.**I shall have been led, etc.*

dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus	{ erō	ductī	{ erimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	(-a, um)	{ eris	(-ae, -a)	{ eritis
dūxerit	dūxerint		{ erit		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris (-re)	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur

IMPERFECT

dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris (-re)	dūcerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur

PERFECT

dūxerim	dūxerīmus	ductus	{ sim	ductī	{ sīmus
dūxerīs	dūxerītis	(-a, -um)	{ sīs	(-ae, -a)	{ sītis
dūxerit	dūxerint		{ sit		{ sint

PLUPERFECT

dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus	{ essem	ductī	{ essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis	(-a, -um)	{ essēs	(-ae, -a)	{ essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent		{ esset		{ essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

*Lead thou, etc.**Be thou led, etc.*

2d dūc (e)	dūcite	2d dūcere	dūciminī
------------	--------	-----------	----------

FUTURE

*Thou shalt lead, etc.**Thou shalt be led, etc.*

2d dūcitō	dūcitōte	2d dūcitor	
3d dūcitō	dūcuntō	3d dūcitor	dūcuntor

Active Voice

Passive Voice

INFINITIVE

PRES. <i>dūcere, to lead.</i>	<i>dūcī, to be led.</i>
PERF. <i>dūxisse, to have led.</i>	<i>ductus esse, to have been led.</i>
FUT. <i>ductūrus esse, to be about to lead.</i>	<i>ductum irī, to be about to be led.</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRES. <i>dūcēns, -entis, leading.</i>	PERF. <i>ductus, -a, -um, having been led.</i>
FUT. <i>ductūrus, -a, -um, about to lead.</i>	

GERUND

<i>Gen. dūcendī, of leading.</i>
<i>Dat. dūcendō, for leading.</i>
<i>Acc. dūcendum, leading.</i>
<i>Abl. dūcendō, by leading.</i>

GERUNDIVE

<i>dūcendus, -a, -um, to be led.</i>

SUPINE

<i>Acc. ductum, to lead.</i>
<i>Abl. ductū, to lead.</i>

589.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.*STEMS: *audī-, audīv-, audīt-.*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

<i>I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.</i>		<i>I am heard, etc.</i>	
<i>audiō</i>	<i>audīmus</i>	<i>audior</i>	<i>audīmur</i>
<i>audīs</i>	<i>audītis</i>	<i>audīris (-re)</i>	<i>audīmini</i>
<i>audit</i>	<i>audiunt</i>	<i>audītur</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>

Active Voice

Passive Voice

IMPERFECT

*I heard, was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris (-re)	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

FUTURE

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris (-re)	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

PERFECT

*I have heard, I heard, etc.**I have been (was) heard, etc.*

audīvī	audīvimus	audītus	{ sum	audītī	{ sumus
audīvistī	audīvistis	{ (-a, -um)	{ es	{ (-ae, -a)	{ estis
audīvit	audīvērunt (ēre)		{ est		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus	{ erām	audītī	{ erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis	{ (-a, -um)	{ erās	{ (-ae, -a)	{ erātis
audīverat	audīverant		{ erat		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audīverō	audīverimus	audītus	{ erō	audītī	{ erimus
audīveris	audīveritis	{ (-a, -um)	{ eris	{ (-ae, -a)	{ eritis
audīverit	audīverint		{ erit		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris (-re)	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

Active Voice

Passive Voice

IMPERFECT

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris (-re)	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT

audīverim	audīverīmus	audītus	{ sim	audītī	{ sīmus
audīverīs	audīverītis	(-a, -um)	{ sīs	(-ae, -a)	{ sītis
audīverit	audīverint		{ sit		{ sint

PLUPERFECT

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus	{ essem	audītī	{ essēmus
audīvisēs	audīvisētis	(-a, -um)	{ essēs	(-ae, -a)	{ essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		{ esset		{ essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

*Hear thou, etc.**Be thou heard, etc.*

2d audī	audīte	2d audīre	audīminī
---------	--------	-----------	----------

FUTURE

*Thou shalt hear, etc.**Thou shalt be heard, etc.*

2d audītō	audītōte	2d audītor	
3d audītō	audiuntō	3d audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	audīre, to hear.	audīrī, to be heard.
PERF.	audīvisse, to have heard.	audītus esse, to have been heard.
FUT.	audītūrus esse, to be about to hear.	audītum irī, to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	audiēns, -entis, hearing.	PERF.	audītus, -a, -um, heard,
FUT.	audītūrus, -a, -um, about to hear.		having been heard.

Active Voice

GERUND

Gen.	audiendī, <i>of hearing.</i>
Dat.	audiendō, <i>for hearing.</i>
Acc.	audiendum, <i>hearing.</i>
Abl.	audiendō, <i>by hearing.</i>

Passive Voice

GERUNDIVE

audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*

SUPINE

Acc. audītum, *to hear.*

Abl. audītū, *to hear.*

590. THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN *IO*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.

STEMS: cape-, cēp-, capt-.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I take, am taking, do take, etc.

I am taken, etc.

capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capimini
capit	capiant	capitur	capiuntur

IMPERFECT

I took, was taking, etc.
capiēbam, etc.

I was taken.
capiēbar, etc.

FUTURE

I shall take, etc.

I shall be taken, etc.

capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur
capies	capietis	capieris (-re)	capiemini
capiet	capient	capietur	capientur

PERFECT

I have taken, took, etc.
cēpī, etc.

I have been (was) taken, etc.
captus sum, etc.

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PLUPERFECT

I had taken, etc.

cēperam, etc.

I had been taken, etc.

captus eram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken, etc.

cēperō, etc.

I shall have been taken, etc.

captus erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam

capiāmus

capiar

capiāmur

capiās

capiātis

capiāris (-re)

capiāminī

capiat

capiant

capiātur

capiantur

IMPERFECT

caperem, etc.

caperer, etc.

PERFECT

cēperim, etc.

captus sim, etc.

PLUPERFECT

cēpisset

captus essem, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

*Take (thou), etc.**Be (thou) taken, etc.*

2d cape

capite

2d capere

capimini

FUTURE

*Thou shalt take, etc.**Thou shalt be taken, etc.*

2d capitō

capitōte

2d capitor

3d capitō

capiuntō

3d capitor

capiuntor

INFINITIVE

PRES. capere, to take.

capī, to be taken.

PERF. cēpisse, to have taken.

captus esse, to have been taken.

FUT. captūrus esse, to be about to take.

captum irī, to be about to be taken.

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PARTICIPLES

PRES. capiēns, -ientis, *taking.*PERF. captus, -a, -um, *taken, hav-*FUT. captūrus -a, -um, *about to*
*take.**ing been taken.*

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen. capiendī, *of taking.*capiendus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*Dat. capiendō, *for taking.*Acc. capiendum, *taking.*Abl. capiendō, *by taking.*

SUPINE

Acc. captum, *to take.*Abl. captū, *to take.*

591.

IRREGULAR VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS :

PRINCIPAL PARTS :

sum, esse, fuī.

possum, posse, potuī.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

*I am, etc.**I am able, I can, etc.*

sum

sumus

possum

possumus

es

estis

potes

potestis

est

sunt

potest

possunt

IMPERFECT

*I was, etc.**I was able, I could, etc.*

eram

erāmus

poteram

poterāmus

erās

erātis

poterās

poterātis

erat

erant

poterat

poterant

FUTURE

*I shall be, etc.**I shall be able, etc.*

erō

erimus

poterō

poterimus

eris

eritis

poteris

poteritis

erit

erunt

poterit

poterunt

Sum

Possum

PERFECT

*I was, have been, etc.**I have been able, I could, etc.*

fuī	fuimus	potuī	potuimus
fuistī	fuistis	potuistī	potuistis
fuit	fuērunt (-ēre)	potuit	potuērunt (-ēre)

PLUPERFECT

*I had been, etc.**I had been able, etc.*

fueram	fuerāmus	potueram	potuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis	potuerās	potuerātis
fuerat	fuerant	potuerat	potuerant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been, etc.**I shall have been able, etc.*

fuerō	fuerimus	potuerō	potuerimus
fueris	fueritis	potueris	potueritis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

sim	sīmus	possim	possīmus
sīs	sītis	possīs	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint

IMPERFECT

essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

PERFECT

fuerim	fuerīmus	potuerim	potuerīmus
fuerīs	fuerītis	potuerīs	potuerītis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

PLUPERFECT

fuissem	fuissēmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis	potuissēs	potuissētis
fuisset	fuissent	potuisset	potuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

*Be thou, etc.*2d es

este

PRESENT

FUTURE

Thou shalt be, etc.

2d estō

estōte

3d estō

suntō

FUTURE

INFINITIVE

PRES. esse, to be.

posse, to be able.

PERF. fuisse, to have been.

potuisse, to have been able

FUT. futūrus esse, }
 or } to be about
 fore } to be.

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

—

PRESENT

potēns, -entis (used as an adjective),
 powerful.

FUTURE

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.

592. PRINCIPAL PARTS: volō, velle, voluī, be willing, wish.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling.

mālō, mälle, māluī, be more willing,
 prefer.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

volō	volumus	nōlō	nōlumus	mālō	mālumus
vīs	vultis	nōn vīs	nōn vultis	māvīs	māvultis
vult	volunt	nōn vult	nōlunt	māvult	mālunt

IMPERFECT

volēbam

nōlēbam

mālēbam

FUTURE

volam

nōlam

mālam

PERFECT

voluī

nōluī

māluī

PLUPERFECT

volueram

nōlueram

mālueram

FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō

nōluerō

māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

velim velīmus
 velīs velītis
 velit velint

nōlim nōlīmus
 nōlīs nōlītis
 nōlit nōlint

mālim mālīmus
 mālīs mālītis
 mālit mālint

IMPERFECT

vellem

nōllem

māllem

PERFECT

voluerim

nōluerim

māluerim

PLUPERFECT

voluissem

nōluissem

māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

—

2d nōlī nōlīte

—

FUTURE

—

2d nōlītō nōlītōte

—

—

3d nōlītō nōluntō

—

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
-------	---------------	---------------	---

593. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry.**

INDICATIVE

Active

Passive

PRESENT

ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris (-re)	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

IMPERFECT

ferēbam	ferēbar
----------------	----------------

FUTURE

feram	ferar
--------------	--------------

PERFECT

tulī	lātus sum
-------------	------------------

PLUPERFECT

tuleram	lātus eram
----------------	-------------------

FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō	lātus erō
---------------	------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

feram	ferar
--------------	--------------

IMPERFECT

ferrem	ferrer
---------------	---------------

PERFECT

tulerim	lātus sim
----------------	------------------

Active		Passive	
		PLUPERFECT	
tulisse		lātus essem	
		IMPERATIVE	
		PRESENT	
2d fer	fer	2d ferre	ferimini
		FUTURE	
2d fertō	fertōte	2d fertor	
3d fertō	feruntō	3d fertor	feruntor
		INFINITIVE	
PRES.	ferre		ferri
PERF.	tulisse		lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse		lātum iri
		PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	ferēns		—
PERF.	—		lātus
FUT.	lātūrus		—
		GERUND	
Gen. ferendī		GERUNDIVE	
Dat. ferendō		ferendus	
Acc. ferendum			
Abl. ferendō			
		SUPINE	
Acc. lātum			
Abl. lātū			

594. PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, iī (ivī), itūrus, go.

INDICATIVE		Active	
		IMPERATIVE	
		PRESENT	
eō	īmus	2d ī	ite
īs	ītis		
it	eunt		

Active	
IMPERFECT	
ībam	
FUTURE	
ībō	
PERFECT	
īī	
PLUPERFECT	
ieram	
FUTURE PERFECT	
ierō	
SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT	
eam	
IMPERFECT	
īrem	
PERFECT	
ierim	
PLUPERFECT	
īssem	

Active	
FUTURE	
2d itō	itōte
3d itō	euntō
INFINITIVE	
PRES. īre	
PERF. īsse (iisse)	
FUT. itūrus esse	
PARTICIPLES	
PRES. iēns, euntis	
FUT. itūrus	
GERUND	
Gen. eundī	
Dat. eundō	
Acc. eundum	
Abl. eundō	
SUPINE	
Acc. itum	
Abl. itū	

595. PRINCIPAL PARTS : fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.

INDICATIVE	
PRESENT	
fīō	fīmus
fīs	fītis
fīt	fīunt
IMPERFECT	
fīēbam	
FUTURE	
fīam	

IMPERATIVE	
PRESENT	
2d fī	fīte
INFINITIVE	
PRES. fierī	
PERF. factus esse	
FUT. factum īrī	

Active	Passive
PERFECT	PARTICIPLES
factus sum	PRES. —
PLUPERFECT	PERF. factus
factus eram	GERUNDIVE
FUTURE PERFECT	faciendus
factus erō	
SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT	PERFECT
fiam	factus sim
IMPERFECT	PLUPERFECT
fierem	factus essem

RULES OF SYNTAX

For Reference and Review

The number following the rule designates the section in which it is given.

NOMINATIVE CASE

596. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative. § 15.

597. A noun used in the predicate after an intransitive verb is in the nominative and is called the predicate nominative. § 28.

GENITIVE CASE

598. Possession is denoted by the genitive. § 27.

599. The genitive denotes the whole of which a part is taken and is called the genitive of the whole. § 260.

600. The quality or description of a noun may be expressed by the genitive with an adjective. § 441.

601. Definite measurement must be expressed by the genitive. § 441, *a*.

DATIVE CASE

602. The indirect object is expressed by the dative. § 56.

603. The dative is used to limit adjectives meaning *like*, *unlike*, *equal*, *unequal*, and *near*. § 230.

604. Adjectives meaning *dear*, *faithful*, *friendly*, *suitable*, *useful*, etc., and their opposites, take the dative. § 269.

605. Many verbs meaning *benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, *believe* or *distrust*, *persuade*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, and the like, take the dative. § 499.

606. The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and sometimes **circum**. § 419.

607. A dative expressing purpose is used with **sum** and a few other verbs. § 508.

608. The dative is used with **sum** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. § 514.

609. With the passive periphrastic the dative is used to denote the agent or doer of the action. § 531.

ACCUSATIVE CASE

610. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. § 16.

611. Place whither is expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**. § 76. See § 278 for exceptions.

612. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative. § 286.

613. The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative. § 307.

614. The accusative is used with about thirty prepositions, the most common of which are **ad**, **ante**, **apud**, **circum**, **contrā**, **inter**, **per**, **trāns**. § 333.

615. The accusative is often used adverbially to express degree or extent. § 382.

ABLATIVE CASE

616. Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. § 65.

617. Place in which is expressed by the ablative with **in**; place whence, by the ablative with **ā**, **ab**, **ē**, or **ex**. § 76. See § 278 for exceptions.

618. Accompaniment (in company with or in conflict with) is expressed by the ablative with **cum**. § 102.

619. Manner is expressed by the ablative with a limiting adjective or **cum**, or both. § 114.

620. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. § 140.

621. Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. § 147.

622. Cause may be expressed by the ablative usually without a preposition. § 195.

623. The ablative of specification may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to define its application. It answers the question "In what respect?" § 204.

624. The comparative is followed by the ablative when **quam** (*than*) is omitted. § 221.

625. Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. § 247, 383.

626. The ablative with **dē** or **ex** is sometimes used instead of the genitive of the whole, especially after cardinal numbers. § 260, Note.

627. Separation is expressed by the ablative either with or without a preposition. § 316.

628. The ablative is always used with,

ā or **ab**, **dē**,
cum, **ex** or **ē**,
sine, **prō**, **prae**. § 332.

629. Two prepositions, **in** and **sub**, govern both the accusative and the ablative; with the accusative they denote motion *toward* a place, and with the ablative, rest *in* a place. § 334.

630. The verbs **ûtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vêscor**, and their compounds, regularly govern the ablative. § 375.

631. The quality or description of a noun is expressed by the genitive or ablative with an adjective. § 441.

632. The ablative absolute consists of two words in the ablative case grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It expresses time, cause, condition, or concession. § 463.

VOCATIVE CASE

633. The vocative case is used as the case of address. §§ 2; 6, *a*; 23, *a* and *b*; 494, *a*.

LOCATIVE CASE

634. With names of *cities* and *towns*, **domus** and **rûs**, place at which is expressed by the locative, which is like the genitive in the singular of the first and second declensions, otherwise like the ablative. § 278.

AGREEMENT

635. A noun or pronoun in apposition with another noun or pronoun agrees with it in case. § 187.

636. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number. § 17.

637. An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number and case. § 40.

638. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause. § 395.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

639. The subjunctive may be used in independent sentences to express something as willed. It is then called the volitive subjunctive. § 348.

640. Purpose is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē**. § 353. After verbs of fearing **ut** is translated *that not*; and **nē** *that*. 413¹.

641. Result is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**. § 379.

642. An indirect question follows a verb of knowing, asking, and the like, and is a subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word. It is expressed by the subjunctive. § 402.

643. A clause introduced by **cum** takes the subjunctive to denote the circumstances under which an action took place. This use is found only in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses. § 470.

644. A clause introduced by **cum** and expressing cause is regularly in the subjunctive. § 471.

645. A clause introduced by **cum** and expressing concession is in the subjunctive. 472.

646. The present subjunctive is used in conditional sentences expressing a doubt in future time. The conclusion states that something *would* take place if a certain condition *should* be fulfilled. § 480.

647. In a conditional sentence expressing a thought contrary to fact, the imperfect subjunctive is used for present time, and the pluperfect subjunctive for past time. § 482.

INFINITIVE MOOD

648. The time denoted by the infinitive is always relative, depending on the principal verb. The future infinitive denotes time after, the perfect time before, and the present the same time as the principal verb. § 304.

649. *Possum* and a few other verbs require a complementary infinitive to complete their meaning. § 176.

650. A statement in indirect discourse is expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative. § 303.

651. An infinitive or clause used substantively is neuter singular. § 476¹.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

652. In indirect discourse, that is, when the thought of the speaker is given without his exact words, a statement is expressed by the infinitive; questions, commands, and subordinate clauses, by the subjunctive. §§ 554, 303.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

As an Aid to the Study of Latin

NOUNS

653. A *Noun* is the name of some person or thing.

654. A *Common Noun* is the name of one of a class of objects: *picture, story*.

655. A *Proper Noun* is the name of a particular person or object: *Caesar, Rome*.

656. A *Collective Noun* is one which, singular in form, may apply to a group of objects: *family, army*.

657. A *Verbal Noun* is the name of an action. *Walking* is good exercise.

658. An *Abstract Noun* is the name of a quality or condition: *goodness, wealth*.

PRONOUNS

659. A *Pronoun* (Latin *prō*, *for*, and *nōmen*, *name*) is a word used for a noun. I saw James as *he* was coming.

660. A *Personal Pronoun* shows by its form whether it refers to the speaker (first person, *I*); the one spoken to (second person, *you*); or the one spoken of (third person, *he*).

661. A *Relative Pronoun* refers to a word in a preceding clause called the antecedent.

(a) The relative connects the two clauses. The man *whom* I saw was blind.

(b) The relative pronouns are *who, which, what, and that*.

662. An *Interrogative Pronoun* asks a question. *Who* are you? The interrogative pronouns are *who, which, what*.

663. A *Demonstrative Pronoun* points out a particular person or thing: *this, these; that, those*.

664. An *Indefinite Pronoun* does not refer to any definite person or thing: *some, any one*.

665. A *Reflexive Pronoun* refers back to the subject. The man praises *himself*.

666. Nouns and Pronouns have *gender, person, number, and case*.

667. *Gender* distinguishes sex.

(a) Names of males are *masculine*; names of females, *feminine*; names of things are *neuter*.

(In Latin the gender is often determined by the ending of the noun.)

668. *Number* shows how many persons or things are referred to. *Singular* number denotes but one; *plural* number denotes more than one.

669. *Case* shows the relation of the noun or pronoun to the other words of the sentence.

(a) There are three cases in English: *Nominative, Possessive, Objective*.

670. The *Nominative Case* is used as the subject of a sentence or in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb. The *boy* ran home. You are a wise *man*. The man was called *general*.

671. The *Possessive Case* denotes possession. *Caesar's* soldiers were brave.

672. The *Objective Case* is used as the object of a verb or preposition. Caesar sent the *army* to the *city*.

673. *Inflection* is the change in the form of a word to show its relation to the other words of a sentence. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called *Declension*: Nom. *who*, Poss. *whose*, Obj. *whom*. The inflection of a verb is called *Conjugation*.

ADJECTIVES

674. An *Adjective* is used to limit or describe a noun or its equivalent. *Five* boys came. The soldiers were *brave*. To err is *human*.

675. *A, an, and the* are called *Articles*. *The* is the definite article; *a* and *an* are indefinite articles.

676. Adjectives denoting number are called *Numeral Adjectives*. They are either *Cardinals*, denoting how many: *three, ten*; or *Ordinals*, denoting which one in order: *third, tenth*.

677. *Comparison of Adjectives* is a change in form by which degree of quality is expressed.

- (a) The degrees of comparison are called *positive, comparative, and superlative*.
- (b) The *Positive* denotes the quality in the simple state: *large, good*.
- (c) The *Comparative* denotes the quality in a greater or less degree: *larger, better, less beautiful*.
- (d) The *Superlative* denotes the quality in greatest or least degree: *largest, best, least beautiful*.

678. Adjectives are compared *regularly* by adding to the positive *-er* for the comparative, and *-st* or *-est* for the superlative; *irregularly*; and by adding *more* and *most, less* and *least* to the positive. Most adjectives of more than one syllable are compared in this last way. *Large, larger, largest*; *good, better, best*; *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful*.

(For comparing adjectives regularly in Latin, see § 214.)

VERBS

679. A *Verb* is a word used to assert action or state of being: *to sing, to be*.

680. A *Transitive Verb* is one which commonly requires an object to complete its meaning. He *killed* his enemy.

(Transitive is from the Latin *trāns*, *across*, and *eō*, *go*, because the action goes over from the subject to the object of the verb.)

681. An *Intransitive Verb* is one which does not require an object to complete its meaning. They *dwell* in Gaul.

682. An *Impersonal Verb* is one which does not take a personal subject and is used only in the third person singular. *It rains*.

683. An *Auxiliary Verb* (Latin *auxilium*, *aid*) is one which aids in the conjugation of other verbs. I *was* reading. *Does* he read?

684. Verbs have *voice, mood, tense, person, and number*.

685. The inflection of a verb is called *Conjugation*. The *Conjugation* gives the forms of a verb in all voices, moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

686. The *Synopsis* of a verb gives its forms in any required person and number through all moods and tenses.

VOICE

687. A verb is in the *Active Voice* when the subject performs the action. Caesar *has fought*.

688. A verb is in the *Passive Voice* when the subject is acted upon. The boys *were punished*.

NOTE. — Intransitive verbs are used only in the active voice.

MOOD

689. By *Mood* (Latin *modus*, *manner*) we mean the manner of making a statement.

690. A verb is in the *Indicative Mood* when it states a fact or asks whether something is a fact. Rome *was* a great city. *Did* Caesar *conquer* the Gauls?

691. The *Subjunctive Mood* states something as *demand*ed, *wish*ed for, *poss*ible, *conting*ent, or *contrary* to fact.

He *shall* pay me. Heaven *help* us! If it *should* rain, they *would* not go. If we *were* better, we *should* be happier.

692. The *Imperative Mood* expresses a command. Soldiers, *draw* your swords.

(a) With the imperative the subject is usually not expressed. The person addressed is put in the Nominative Independent. (Vocative in Latin.)

693. The *Infinitive* is a form of the verb not limited by person and number. *To forgive* is divine.

(a) It may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

(b) It has the *present* and *perfect* tenses only.

(c) The *Present Infinitive* represents an action as taking place *at the time* of the principal verb. He wishes (wished, will wish) *to fight*.

(d) The *Perfect Infinitive* represents an action as *completed* at the time of the principal verb. The man is said (was said, will be said) *to have fought*.

694. The *Infinitive* with subject in the objective (Latin Accusative) case is used after verbs meaning wish, prefer, and the like when its subject is not the same as that of the governing verb. I wish *you to go*.

(a) When the subject of both verbs is the same, the subject of the infinitive is not expressed. I wish *to go*.

TENSE (INDICATIVE)

695. The *Present Tense* represents an action as taking place at the present time (Latin Present). The soldiers *fight*.

696. The *Past Tense* represents something as having occurred in the past. (Latin Imperfect and Perfect.) The soldiers *were fighting, fought*.

697. The *Future Tense* represents something that will occur in the future. (Latin Future.) The soldiers *will fight*.

698. The *Present Perfect* represents an action as completed at the present time. (Latin Perfect.) The soldiers *have fought*.

699. The *Past Perfect* represents an action as having been completed before some past time. (Latin Pluperfect.) The soldiers *had fought*.

700. The *Future Perfect* represents an action as having taken place before some definite time in the future. (Latin Future Perfect.) The soldiers *will have fought* long before they conquer.

PERSON AND NUMBER

701. A Verb agrees with its *subject* in *person* and *number*.

(a) A verb having two or more subjects connected by *and* must be in the plural. The boy and the girl *are* my friends.

(b) A verb having two or more singular subjects separated by *or* or *nor* must be in the singular. Neither the boy nor the girl *is* happy.

PARTICIPLES

702. A *Participle* is a *Verbal Adjective*. Like a verb it may take an object and have adverbial modifiers. We saw the man *beating* the horse *severely*.

Like an adjective, it may modify a noun. A *babbling* brook flows through the meadow.

ADVERBS

703. *Adverbs* modify *verbs*, *adjectives*, and *other adverbs*. He ran *swiftly*. He is *nearly* blind. They fought *very* bravely.

704. An *Adverb* may express: *Time*, recently; *Manner*, swiftly; *Place*, here; *Degree*, very; *Affirmation*, yes; *Negation*, no, not.

705. An *Interrogative Adverb* asks a question with reference to *time*, *place*, *manner*, or *reason*. *When* shall we go? *Where* shall we go? *How* shall we go? *Why* shall we go?

706. A *Conjunctive Adverb* is used to introduce an adverbial clause. *While* there is life, there is hope.

PREPOSITIONS

707. A *Preposition* (Latin **prae**, *before*, and **pōnō**, *place*) is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to the rest of the sentence. He lived *in* Italy. He went *to* Rome.

CONJUNCTIONS

708. A *Conjunction* (Latin **con**, *together*, and **iungō**, *join*) is a word used to connect words, phrases, or clauses.

- (a) A *Coördinate* Conjunction connects elements of equal rank or importance: *and*, *but*, *nor*.
- (b) A *Subordinate* Conjunction connects elements of unequal rank or importance: *because*, *if*.

INTERJECTIONS

709. An *Interjection* (Latin **inter**, *between*, and **iaciō**, *throw*) is a word thrown into a sentence to express surprise or emotion and used independently of the rest of the sentence: *ah*, *oh*, *halloo*.

RULES OF SYNTAX

710. The *Subject* of a verb is in the *Nominative* case. *Rome* was a large city.

711. The *Direct Object* of a verb is in the *Objective* (Latin Accusative) case. Virgil wrote *poetry*.

712. A noun or adjective used in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb agrees with the subject in case and is called the *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*. They were *children*. They were *good*. He was chosen *king*. He was called *wise*.

- (a) It may be stated thus: An Intransitive or Passive verb takes the same case after it as before it.

713. *Possession* is denoted by the *Possessive* (Genitive) case or *of* with an object. We read *Horace's* poems. We read the poems *of Horace*.

714. Some transitive verbs having the general meaning of giving, telling, etc., take two objects, a *direct* and an *indirect*.

(a) The *Direct Object* receives the full effect of the action; the *Indirect Object* is that *to* or *for* which something is done or happens. We gave (to) *Caesar* the letter. We told *him* the reason.

715. The *Objective* (Latin *Accusative*) case is used as the subject of an infinitive. Caesar ordered *him to fight*.

C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

SELECTIONS FROM BOOK I

Divisions of Gaul

Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs, quarum¹ ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā² Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, proximīque sunt Germānīs,³ quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte⁴ praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis⁵ cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis finibus⁶ eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

The Helvetians decide to migrate

Undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fiēbat,⁷ ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs⁸ bellum inferre possent. Prō multitudīne autem

¹ § 599.

² § 616.

³ § 603.

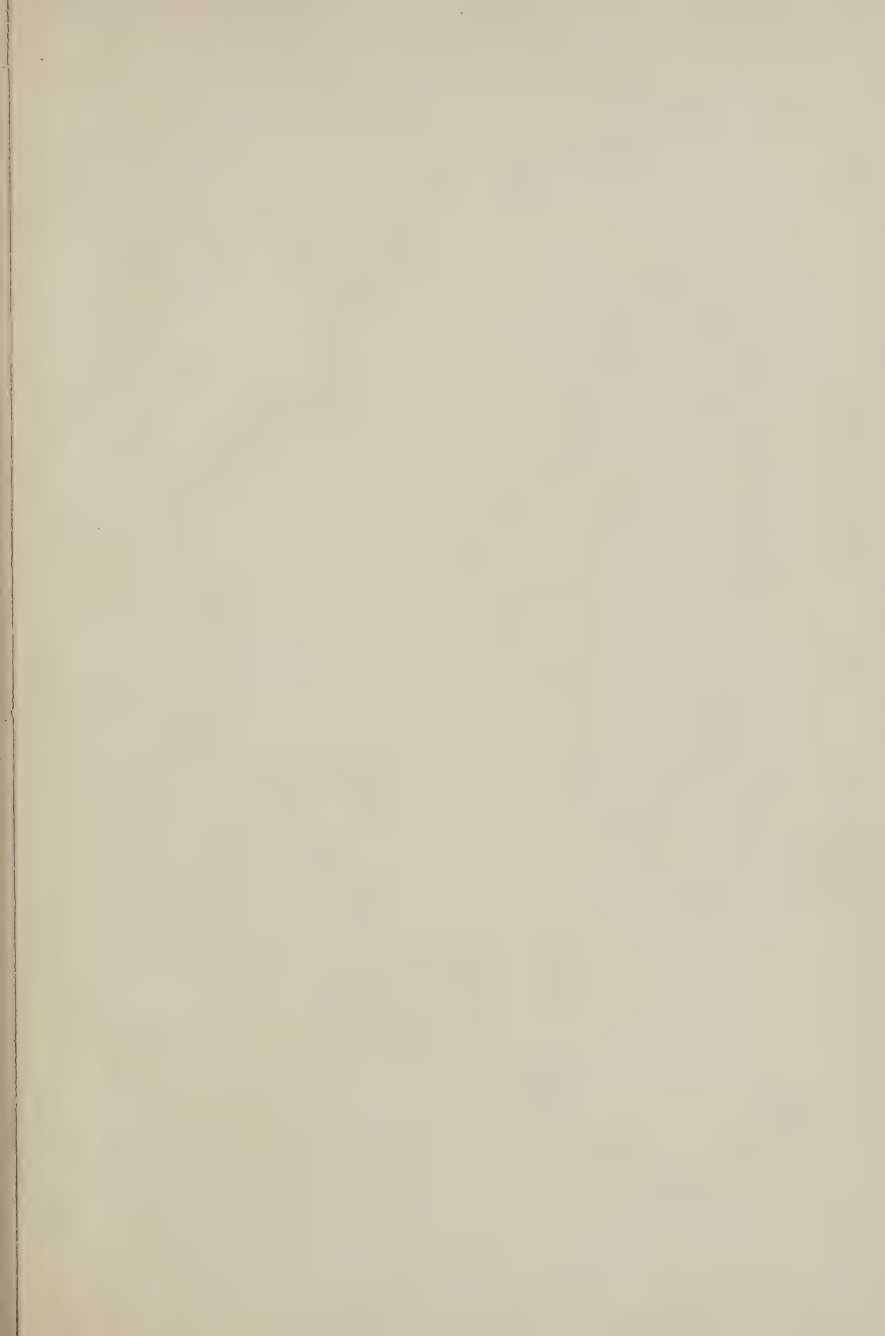
⁴ § 623.

⁵ § 619.

⁶ § 627.

⁷ The subject is ut . . . possent.

⁸ § 606.







hominum et prō glōriā bellī angustōs sē finīs habēre arbitrābantur.

They prepare to depart

Cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās¹ biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectionem lēge cōnfīrmant.

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt.

Two ways to depart

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent;² ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur;² mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnibus rēbus ad profectionem comparātis, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.

Caesar learns their plans

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam maximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiorēs

¹ § 522, 3.

² Subjunctive of Characteristic.

26
138

facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, quī dīcerent,¹ sibi² esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum. Ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milītēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmp-tūrum.

Intereā eā legiōne,³ quam sēcum habēbat, milītibusque,³ quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mūrum fossamque perdūcit.

He thwarts their plans

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōentur, prohibitūrum⁴ ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī quā minima altitudō flūminis erat, sī perrumpere possent,⁵ cōnātī, milītum concursū⁶ et tēlīs⁶ repulsī hōc cōnātū⁷ dēstitērunt.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOK II

The Belgians conspire against the Romans

Cum esset⁸ Caesar in citeriōre Galliā crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat, omnēs Belgās⁹ contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.

Hīs nūntiīs¹⁰ litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte,¹¹ in ulteriōrem Galliam quī¹² dēdūceret,¹³ Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsīt. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet,¹⁴ ad exercitum vēnit. Dat

¹ § 640.

² § 608.

³ § 616.

⁴ Prohibitūrum = sē prohibitūrum esse.

⁵ § 642.

⁶ § 616.

⁷ § 627.

⁸ § 643.

⁹ § 613.

¹⁰ § 622.

¹¹ § 632.

¹² § 396¹.

¹³ § 640.

¹⁴ § 643.

negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant¹ sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant.¹ Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs² cōgī,³ exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā⁴ castra movet diēbusque⁵ circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit.

The Remi declare their loyalty to Caesar

Eō cum vēnisset, Rēmī ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecum-
brium, primōs civitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent,¹ sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī eis Rhēnum incolant,⁶ sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse.

Caesar finds out the strength of the enemy

Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae civitātēs quantaque in armīs essent⁷ et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās² esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōsēdisse. Plūrimum⁸ inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte⁹ et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre;³ hōs posse cōficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum; nunc esse rēgem Galbam: oppida habēre numerō xii, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nervīōs; quīndecim mīlia Atrebatēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Vellocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem,

¹ § 640.

² § 613.

³ § 650.

⁴ § 632.

⁵ § 621.

⁶ § 652.

⁷ § 642.

⁸ § 615.

⁹ § 623.

Aduatucōs XIX mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Cae-manōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Caesar gives directions to the Remi

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum¹ ad sē convenīre prīncipumque liberōs obsidēs² ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Aeduum magnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere rei pūblīcae commūnisque salūtis³ intersit⁴ manūs hostium distīnērī. Id fierī posse,⁵ sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint⁶ et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit.

Caesar crosses the river and fortifies his camp

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās¹ ad sē venīre vīdit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdinem pedum⁷ XII vāllō⁸ fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

The Belgians attack Bibrax

Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine⁹ Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi, circumiectā¹⁰ multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus,¹¹ undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt,¹² mūrusque dēfēnsōribus¹³ nūdātus est, testūdine factā succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac

¹ § 613.

² § 635.

³ Genitive after the impersonal verb *intersit*.

⁴ § 642.

⁵ § 650.

⁶ § 652.

⁷ § 601.

⁸ § 616.

⁹ § 623.

¹⁰ § 632.

¹² Passive voice when followed by a passive infinitive.

¹¹ § 606.

¹³ § 627.

tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī¹ potestās erat nūlli.² Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmūs, quī tum oppidō³ praefuerat, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur,⁴ sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.⁵

Caesar sends relief to the town, and the Belgians march against him

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īdem⁶ ducibus⁷ ūsus, quī nūntiī⁷ ab Icciō vēnerant, sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō⁸ oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū hostibus⁹ spēs potiundī¹⁰ oppidī discessit. Paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs¹¹ aedificiisque, quōs adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs¹² contendērunt et ab milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

Caesar prepares for battle

Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō¹³ supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset¹⁴ et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īferiōrēs intellēxit, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum, et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē hostēs ab lateribus pugnantes suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnserīpserat, in castrīs relictīs, ut subsidiō¹⁵ dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxerant.

¹ § 517.

² § 608.

³ § 606.

⁴ § 652.

⁵ § 650.

⁶ § 630.

⁷ § 635.

⁸ § 607.

⁹ § 627.

¹⁰ § 519.

¹¹ § 632.

¹² § 618.

¹³ § 627.

¹⁴ § 642.

¹⁵ § 607.

The Belgians attempt to cut off Caesar's supplies

Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Ubi neutri trānseundī initium faciunt Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō,¹ ut, sī possent,² castellum, cui³ praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent⁴ pontemque interseinderent, sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur,⁴ quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī⁵ ad bellum gerendum⁶ erant, commeātūque⁷ nostrōs prohibērent.

The Belgians are defeated and disperse

Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et funditōrēs sagittariōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est.⁸ Hostēs impedītōs nostrī⁹ in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō¹⁰ et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt¹¹ neque nostrōs in locum iniquiōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō, cōstituērunt optimum esse, domum¹² suam quemque revertī, quod Aeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant.

Eā rē cōstitutā¹³ secundā vigiliā¹⁴ magnō cum strepitū¹⁵ ac tumultū castrīs⁷ ēgressī nullō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret¹⁶ et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt, ut cōnsimilis fugae¹⁷ profectiō vidērētur.¹⁸

They are pursued by the Roman army, and many are slain

Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculatōrēs cognitā, insidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent,¹⁹ nōndum perspexerat,

¹ § 622.² Subjunctive by attraction.³ § 606.⁴ § 640.⁵ § 607.⁶ § 522, 3.⁷ § 627.⁸ § 534, 2.⁹ § 420².¹⁰ § 519.¹¹ § 473, 1.¹² § 278.¹³ § 632.¹⁴ § 621.¹⁵ § 619.¹⁶ § 644.¹⁷ § 603.¹⁸ § 641.¹⁹ § 642.

exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Primā luce¹ cōfirmatā rē ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, quī novissimum agmen moraretur,² praemisit. His³ Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit. T. Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa milia passuum prosecuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt. Sub occasum solis sequi destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

Caesar attacks the Suessiones, and their chief town, Noviodunum, surrenders

Caesar, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere⁴ ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus,⁵ expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, vineas agere coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proximam nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis⁶ ad oppidum actis, aggere iacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine⁷ operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate⁷ Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditioe mittunt et, petentibus Remis, ut conservarentur, impetrant.

The Bellovacii come and seek peace

Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis⁸ civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditioem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suae omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnes maiores natu⁹ ex oppido

¹ § 621.

² § 640.

³ § 606.

⁴ Supply confecto.

⁵ § 463, 4.

⁶ § 632.

⁷ § 622.

⁸ § 635.

⁹ § 623.

ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre¹ coepērunt, sēsē² in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset³ castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs⁴ manibus suō mōre⁵ pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Divicius pleads for the Bellovaci

Prō hīs Dīviciācus facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitatīs Aeduae fuisse: impulsōs ā suīs principibus et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī⁶ eius cōsiliī principēs fuissent, quod intellegent quantam calamitātem cīvitatī⁷ intulissent,⁸ in Britanniam profūgisce. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, ut suā clēmētiā⁹ ac mānsuētūdine in eōs utātur.

Caesar accepts the surrender

Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitas magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudīne praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOK IV

Caesar plans an expedition to Britain

Caesar in Britanniam proficīscī contendit. Neque praeter mercātōrēs illō¹⁰ adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōri-

¹ § 649.

² § 613.

³ § 643.

⁴ § 632.

⁵ § 619.

⁶ Supply eōs as subject of profūgisce and antecedent of quī.

⁷ § 606.

⁸ § 642.

⁹ § 630.

¹⁰ Adverb.

bus, neque quanta esset¹ insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent¹ neque quī essent¹ ad maiōrum nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

He finds out all he can about the island

Ad haec cognōscenda, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut ad sē quam primum revertatur. Interim cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur² obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītis, eōs domum remittit, et cum iīs Commium, cuius et virtutem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit,³ adeat civitātēs sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.

He crosses, and on landing is attacked by the Britons

Hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbatur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Interim lēgātīs convocātis et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset,¹ et quae fierī vellet,¹ ostendit.

At barbarī, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū reliquīs cōpiīs⁴ subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitutī nōn poterant, militibus⁵ autem ignōtis locīs, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressis,⁶ simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum⁷ et in flūctibus cōsistendum⁷ et cum hostibus erat pugnandum,⁷ cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conicerent.

¹ § 642.

² § 640.

³ Subjunctive by attraction.

⁴ § 618.

⁵ § 609.

⁶ Agrees with **militibus**.

⁷ § 534.

*The standard bearer of the tenth legion sets an example of
bravery*

Atque nostrīs militibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, “Dēsilite,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē meum rei publicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.” Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē ex nāvī dēsiluērunt.

After a bitter struggle the Britons are forced to flee

Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordinēs servāre neque signa subsequī poterant, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.

They make peace

Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. Caesar quod bellum sine causā intulissent obsidēs imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VI

*The two classes of Gallic nobility; the Knights and the
Druids*

In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī, aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duo. Dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum,¹ alterum equitum.¹ Illī rēbus dīvīnīs

¹ Genitive after est, meaning composed of.

intersunt, ad eōs magnus adulēscētiū numerus disciplīnae causā concurrīt, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātisque cōstituunt. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus¹ praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, cōveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdicīisque pārent.

Privileges of the Druids

Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus mittuntur. Multa dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē terrārum magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortāliū vī ac potestāte disputant.

The gods of the Gauls and their attributes

Deōrum² maximē Mercurium colunt: huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārū atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtē et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opīniōem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtē bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvoent: cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitatibus hārum rērum tumultōs cōspiciārī licet; neque saepe accidit, ut quispiam aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutū est.

¹ § 606.

² § 599, depending on maximē.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā, ab, prep. (with abl.), *from, by.*
ab, adv., off.

absum, -esse, āfuī, to be away,
absent, to be exempt.

ac, conj., and, and also.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, ap-
proach.

accidō, -ere, accidī, —, happen.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, re-
ceive, accept.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., sharp,
active.

aciēs, -ēī, f., line of battle.

ācriter, adv., sharply, fiercely.

ad, prep. (with acc.), to, near,
toward, for, about (with words
of number), according to.

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,
lead to, influence.

adeō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, go to, ap-
proach, visit (followed by acc.).

adigō, -ere, ēgī, -actus, drive.

adorior, -irī, -ortus sum, attack.

Aduatucī, -ōrum, m., Aduatuci,
a people of Gaul.

adulēscēns, -centis, m., a youth.

adventus, -ūs, m., arrival, ap-
proach.

adversus, -a, -um, adj., turned
toward, facing, face to face.

aedificium, -ī, n., building.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, build.

Aeduus, -ī, m., Aeduan.

aegrē, adv., with difficulty.

Aenēas, -ae, m., Aeneas.

aequus, -a, -um, equal, serene.

āēr, āēris, m., air.

aestās, -tātis, f., summer.

aetās, -tātis, f., age.

afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus,
bring.

ager, agrī, m., field.

agger, aggeris, m., rampart.

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum,
approach, attack.

agmen, -minis, n., army (on the
march); novissimum agmen,
rear; primum agmen, van.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, do, act,
drive, treat; move forward.

agricola, -ae, m., farmer.

ala, -ae, f., wing.

albus, -a, -um, adj., white.

ālea, -ae, f., a die.

aliās, adv., at another time.

alibī, adv., at another place.

alii . . . alii, some . . . others.

aliquis, aliquid, some one, some-
thing.

alius, -a, -ud, gen. aliūs (often
alterius), adj., another, other.

alius . . . alius, one . . . another.

Allobrogēs, -um, m., Allobroges.

almus, -a, -um, adj., nourishing.

alter, altera, alterum, the other.

alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.

altitūdō, -inis, f., *height, depth*.
 altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep, tall*.
 Ambiānī, -ōrum, m., *Ambiani*.
 ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk*.
 America, -ae, f., *America*.
 amicitia, -ae, f., *friendship*.
 amicus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly*.
 amicus, -ī, m., *friend*.
 āmittō, -ere, āmisī, āmissus, *send away, lose*.
 amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love*.
 amoenus, -a, -um, *pleasant, delightful*.
 amplius, adv., *more*.
 an, conj., *or*.
 Andecomborius, -ī, m., *a prominent man among the Remi*.
 angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.
 angustē, adv., *closely*.
 animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *notice*.
 animal, -ālis, n., *animal*.
 animus, -ī, m., *mind, heart, spirit*; *esse in animō, to intend*.
 annōn, *or not*.
 annus, -ī, m., *year*.
 ante, adv., *before, ago*.
 ante, prep. (with acc.), *before*.
 antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place before, prefer*.
 antiquitus, adv., *in ancient times*.
 antiquus, -a, -um, *ancient*.
 ānulus, -ī, m., *finger-ring*.
 apertus, -a, -um, *uncovered*.
 Apollō, -inis, m., *Apollo*.
 appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *address, call, name*.
 Appius, -a, -um, *Appian*.
 appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approach*.
 apud, prep., *among*.

aqua, -ae, f., *water*.
 aquaeductus, -ūs, m., *aqueduct*.
 aquila, -ae, f., *eagle, standard*.
 Aquitānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania*.
 Aquitānus, -ī, m., *an Aquitanian*.
 āra, -ae, f., *altar*.
 arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think*.
 arbor, -oris, f., *tree*.
 arduum, -ī, n., *difficulty*.
 āridum, -ī, n., *dry land*.
 āridus, -a, -um, *dry*.
 arma, -ōrum, n., *arms, implements of war*.
 armātus, -a, -um, *armed*.
 armillā, -ae, f., *armlet, bracelet*.
 arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plow*.
 ars, artis, f., *art, skill*.
 artificium, -ī, n., *art, trade*.
 aspera, -ōrum, n., *difficulties*.
 astrum, -ī, n., *star*.
 atque, conj. (same as ac), *and also*.
 Atrebās, -ātis, m., *an Atrebatian*; *pl. Atrebatians*.
 ātrium, -ī, n., *atrium (the principal apartment of a Roman house)*.
 atrōciter, adv., *fiercely, cruelly*.
 attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctus, *touch, border on*.
 attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *assign*.
 auctor, -ōris, m., *author*.
 auctoritās, -tātis, f., *authority, influence*.
 audācter, adv., *boldly*.
 audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *dare*.
 audiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *hear, hear of*.
 aureus, -a, -um, *golden*.
 auris, -is, f., *ear*.
 Aurunculēius, -ī, m., *Auruncu-*

leius Cotta, a lieutenant of Caesar.

aut, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.

autem, conj., *but, moreover*.

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help*; pl., *auxiliary forces, troops*.

aveō, -ēre, —, —, in the imperative, *ave, hail*.

Axona, -ae, f., *the Aisne (river)*.

B

barbarī, -ōrum, m., *foreigners*.

Belgae, -ārum, m., *Belgians*.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m., *Bellovaci*.

bellum, -ī, n., *war*.

bene, adv., *well*.

Bibrax, -actis, f., *Bibrax*, a town of the Remi.

biennium, -ī, n., *period of two years*.

bis, num. adj., *twice*.

bonus, -a, -um (comp., *melior*; sup., *optimus*), adj., *good*.

Brātuspantium, -ī, n., a stronghold of the Bellovaci.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief*.

Britannī, -ōrum, m., *Britons*.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus*.

C

C., abbreviation for *Gāius*, -ī, m., (Eng.) *Caius*.

caedēs, -is, f., *slaughter*.

caelestēs, -ium, m., *gods*.

Caemanī, -ōrum, m., a small state in Belgic Gaul.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m., a people in Belgic Gaul.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*.

calamitās, -tātis, f., *calamity*.

calathus, -ī, m., *basket*.

Caletī, -ōrum, m., a tribe living near the mouth of the Sequana.

Campānus, -a, -um, of *Campania*.

canis, -is, m. and f., *dog*.

cantilēna, -ae, f., *old song*.

capiō, -ere, -cēpi, -captus, *take, seize, capture*.

Capitōlium, -ī, n., *Capitoline hill*.

captīvus, -ī, m., *captive*.

captīvus, -a, -um, adj., *captive*.

captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *catch*.

caput, -itis, n., *head*.

cāritās, -ātis, f., *esteem*.

carmen, -minis, n., *song, poem*.

Carolus, -ī, m., *Charles*.

carpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, *grasp*.

carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon*.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage* (a city in Africa).

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear*.

Cassius, -ī, m., *Cassius*.

castellum, -ī, n., *stronghold*.

castra, -ōrum, n., *camp*.

Catilina, -ae, m., *Catiline*.

Catō, -ōnis, m., *Caio*.

cauda, -ae, f., *tail*.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason*.

causā (with gen.), *for the sake of*.

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *beware*.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *yield*.

celebrō, āre, -āvī, -ātus, *practice, engage in; celebrate*.

celer, celeris, celere, adj., *quick, swift*.

celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness*.

celeriter, adv., *quickly*.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conceal*.

Celtae, -ārum, m., *Celts*.

centum, indecl. num., *one hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion.*

certē, adv., *certainly.*

certus, -a, -um, adj., *certain*;
certiorem facere, *inform.*

cēterus, -a, -um, adj., *the other.*

Christus, -ī, m., *Christ.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero.*

Cincinnātus, -ī, m., *Cincinnatus.*

circiter, adv., *about.*

circum, prep. (with acc.), *around*,
about; adv., *about, around.*

circumiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus,
place around.

circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —, *stand*
around.

circumspiciō, -ere, -exī, -ectus,
look around.

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus,
come around.

cis, prep. (with acc.), *on this side*
of.

citorior, -ius, adj., *hither.*

cito, adv., *quickly.*

civis, -is, m. and f., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -tātis, f., *state.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, cry out.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, noise.*

clārus, -a, -um, *clear, honorable.*

classis, -is, f., *a fleet.*

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus,
shut, close.

clēmēntia, -ae, f., *clemency.*

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptus,
buy.

coepī, -isse (def., found mainly
in perfect stem tenses), *began.*

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *consider.*

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *be-*
come acquainted with, learn.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, *collect*,
compel.

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (the
tenth part of a legion).

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *en-*
courage.

collis, -is, m., *hill.*

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place*
together, arrange.

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, *culti-*
vate, worship.

columna, -ae, f., *column, pillar.*

combūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ūstus,
burn.

comedō, -ere, -ēdī, -ēsus, *eat up.*

comes, -itis, m. and f., *companion*,
associate.

commeātus, -ūs, m., *supplies.*

commilitō, -ōnis, m., *fellow*
soldier, comrade.

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus,
join; committere proelium,
join battle, begin an engagement.

Commīus, -ī, m., *Commīus.*

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,
disturb, alarm.

commūnis, -e, adj., *common.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pre-*
pare.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill*,
cover, complete.

complūrēs, -a, adj., *several, very*
many.

compos, -otis, adj., *having control.*

cōnātus, -ūs, m., *attempt.*

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus,
yield.

concidō, -ere, cidī, —, *fall, be slain.*

concordia, -ae, f., *concord.*

concurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursus,
run together.

concurſus, -ūs, m., *onset*.

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *form, found, establish*.

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe.

condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *bring together*.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus, *bring together, collect*; (with *sē*), *to betake one's self*.

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *do thoroughly, accomplish, furnish*.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *declare, arrange for, strengthen, assert*.

cōnfligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flictus, *fight, contend*.

congregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gather, collect*.

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *hurl together, hurl*.

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iunctus, *join together, unite*.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conspire*.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *try, attempt*.

cōnſcribō, -ere, -ſcripſī, -ſcriptus, *enroll, enlist, levy*.

consensus, -ūs, m., *agreement*.

cōnſentiō, -īre, -ſēnſī, -ſēnſus, *agree, conspire*.

cōnſervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spare, preserve*.

cōnſidō, -ere, ſēdī, —, *encamp, settle*.

cōnſilium, -ī, n., *plan, advice, counsel*.

cōnſimilis, -e, adj., *very like*.

cōnſiſtō, -ſiſtere, -ſtiti, —, *stand, make a stand*.

cōnſpectus, -ūs, m., *sight, view, presence*.

cōnſpiciō, -ere, -ſpexī, -ſpectus, *observe*.

cōnſpīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *see*.

cōnſtanter, adv., *uniformly*.

cōnſtat (impers.), *it is evident*.

cōnſtituō, -ere, -ſtiti, -ſtitūtus, *determine, found, station, draw up in line, erect, settle*; of ships, *moor*.

cōnſtitūtiō, -ōnis, f., *constitution*.

cōnſuēſcō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, *be accustomed*.

cōnſuētūdō, -inis, f., *habit, custom*.

cōnſul, -ulis, m., *consul*.

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentus, *hasten, contend*.

continenter, adv., *constantly*.

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *hold together, hem in, keep in*.

contrā, adv., *against, opposite*.

contrōverſia, -ae, f., *dispute*.

conveniō, -īre, -vēmī, -ventus, *assemble*.

conventus, -ūs, m., *assembly, meeting*.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, summon*.

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty, supply*; pl., *forces*.

Cornēlia, -ae, f., *Cornelia*.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).

corōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *crown*.

corpus, -oris, n., *body*.

cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj., *daily*.

cotidiē, adv., *daily*.

Cotta, -ae, see *Aurunculēius*.

Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus*.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous.*

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, trust, *believe.*

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, in- *crease.*

cruciātus, -ūs, m., torture.

culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, blame, *censure.*

cultus, -ūs, m., civilization.

cum, prep. (with abl.), with; conj., *when, since, although.*

cum primum, as soon as.

cunctāns, -ntis, adj., hesitating, *delaying.*

cūr, adv., why? wherefore?

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cure.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, *run.*

cūstōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, watch.

cūstōs, -ōdis, m., guard, watch, *keeper.*

D

dē, prep. (with abl.), about, con- *cerning, from.*

dea, -ae, f., goddess.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, ought, *must, (followed by infin.).*

decem, num. adj. (indecl.), ten.

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *tenth.*

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, de- *ceive.*

decōrus, -a, -um, fitting, seemly.

dēcētum, -ī, n., decree, decision.

dēditiō, -ōnis, f., surrender.

dēdō, -ere, didī, -ditus, give up, *surrender.*

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead *down, conduct.*

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *defend, guard.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f., defense.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., defender.

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., tired, *weary, worn out.*

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, fail, *desert.*

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw *down, disappoint.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, destroy.

dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, con- *sult.*

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, choose *from, gather, select.*

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, point *out, explain.*

depellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive *away, ward off.*

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, lay *waste, plunder.*

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus sum, beg to *escape, ask for quarter.*

dēscendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, descend.

dēsertus, -a, -um, adj. deserted.

dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, -ultus, leap down.

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, leave *off, cease.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, despair.

deus, -ī, m., god.

dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, vow, *consecrate.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right, *right hand.*

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, say, speak.

dictātor, -ōris, m., dictator.

dictitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, say re- *peatedly.*

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., day; multō *diē, late in the day; posterō diē,*
the following day.

differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus, scatter, differ.

difficilis, -e, adj., difficult.

difficultās, -tātis, f., difficulty.

diligenter, adv., carefully, diligently.

diligentia, -ae, f., diligence, care.

dimicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight.

dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send in different directions, dismiss, lose.

discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus, go apart, scatter, depart, leave.

disciplina, -ae, f., instruction.

discipulus, -ī, m., pupil.

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, discuss.

dissimilis, -e, adj., unlike.

dissitus, -a, -um, adj., remote.

distineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus, keep apart, separate.

diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv., long, for a long time; quam diū, how long.

dividō, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsus, divide.

divīnus, -a, -um, divine, sacred.

Diviciācus, -ī, Diviciācus, an Aeduan of great influence.

dō, -are, dedi, datus, give; in fugam dare, to put to flight.

doceō, -ēre, -ui, doctus, teach, show.

domesticus, -a, -um, domestic.

domina, -ae, f., mistress, matron.

dominus, -ī, m., master, lord.

domus, -ūs, f. (locative, domī), house, home.

dōnum, -ī, n., gift, present.

drāma, -atis, n., drama, play.

Druidēs, -um, m., Druids.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful.

ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred.

dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead, consider.

dulcis, -e, adj., pleasant, sweet.

dum, conj., while, until.

duo, duae, duo, adj., two.

duodecim, twelve.

duodēviginti, eighteen.

dūrus, -a, -um, hard.

dux, ducis, m., leader, guide.

E

ē or ex, prep. (with abl.), out of, from, on account of.

Eburōnēs, -um, m., a Belgic tribe.

ecce, adv., behold.

ēdoceō, -ēre, -cui, -doctus, inform, instruct.

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, train, educate.

ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxi, ēductus, lead out.

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, bring out, carry away, produce.

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, accomplish, bring about.

ego, mei, pers. pron., I.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, go out, disembark.

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, cast out, expel.

ēlēctus, -a, -um, chosen, picked.

emptor, -ōris, m., buyer.

Ennius, -ī, m., Ennius.

ensis, -is, m., sword.

eō, ire, ii (ivī), itūrus, go.

eō, adv., there.

epistula, -ae, f., a letter, an epistle.

epulae, ārum, pl., feast, banquet.

eques, -itis, m., horseman, knight; pl., cavalry.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., of cavalry.	faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, make, do, accomplish; with iter, march.
equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry.	factum, -ī, n., deed.
equus, -ī, m., horse.	facultās, -tātis, f., opportunity, ability.
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, err.	fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, disap- point, deceive.
et, conj., and, also; et . . . et, both . . . and.	familiāris, -e, adj., belonging to the family.
etiam, adv., also, even.	fās, indecl. n., right, justice.
exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hear.	fēmina, -ae, f., woman.
excelsus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty.	fenestra, -ae, f., window.
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, rouse.	ferāx, -ācis, adj., fertile, produc- tive.
exemplum, -ī, n., example.	ferē, adv., almost, quite.
exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -ītus, go out, withdraw.	feriālis, -e, adj., festival.
exercitus, -ūs, m., army.	ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry, report, say.
eximius, -a, -um, distinguished, excellent.	fertilitās, -ātis, f., fertility.
existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think, reckon.	festinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make haste.
expeditus, -a, -um, unincum- bered.	festus, -a, -um, adj. festive, joyous, (of a) holiday.
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive out.	fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful, loyal.
experientia, -ae, f., experience.	fidēs, -eī, f., faith, pledge, con- fidence.
explōrātor, -ōris, m., scout, spy.	fidus, -a, -um, faithful, reliable.
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, positus, set out, array.	filia, -ae, f., daughter.
expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, take by storm.	filius, -ī, m., son.
exterus, -a, -um, adj., outer, last; ad extrēmum, at the end, finally.	fīniō, -īre, -īvī, ītus, limit, stop, put an end to.
extrā, prep., outside, beyond.	fīnis, -is, m., end; pl., territory.
	fīnitimī, -ōrum, m., neighbors.
	fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., neigh- boring.
F	fīō, fierī, factus sum, become, be made, happen.
fābula, -ae, f., story.	fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., firm, solid.
fac, imperative of facio.	flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, weep, lament.
faciēs, -eī, f., appearance, sight.	flōreō, -ēre, uī, —, flourish, prosper.
facile, adv., easily.	
facilis, -e, adj., easy.	

flōs, flōris, m., *flower*.
 fluctus, -ūs, m., *wave, billow*.
 flūmen, -inis, n., *river*.
 fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxus, *flow*.
 focus, -ī, m., *hearth*.
 fōns, fontis, m., *fountain*.
 fōrmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *form*.
 fortis, -e, adj., *brave*.
 fortiter, adv., *bravely*.
 fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune*.
 forum, forī, m., *forum*.
 fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench*.
 frāter, -tris, m., *brother*.
 frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj., *of grain; with rēs, supply of grain*.
 frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain*.
 fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy*.
 frūstrā, adv., *in vain*.
 fuga, -ae, f., *flight*.
 fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —, *flee*.
 fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke*.
 funditor, -ōris, m., *slinger*.
 fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, *perform*.

G

Gaius, -ī, m., *Gaius*.
 Galba, -ae, m., *Galba*.
 Gallī, -ōrum, m., *Gauls*.
 Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*.
 Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic, of Gaul*.
 Garumna, -ae, f., *the Garonne (river)*.
 gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*.
 Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva*.
 generālis, -e, adj., *general*.
 gēns, gentis, f., *family, nation*.
 genus, -eris, n., *kind, class*.
 Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany*.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German*.
 Germānus, -ī, m., *a German*.
 gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, *carry on, wear; with bellum, wage war*.
 gladius, -ī, m., *sword*.
 glōria, -ae, f., *glory*.
 Gracchus, -ī, m., *Gracchus*.
 Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek*.
 grānum, -ī, n., *grain*.
 grātia, -ae, f., *influence, favor; abl., for the sake of*.
 gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, severe*.

H

habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus, *have, hold, consider; with ōrātiō, deliver*.
 Helvētiī, -ōrum, m., *Helvetians*.
 Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian*.
 hiberna, -ōrum, n., *winter quarters*.
 hīc, adv., *here*.
 hic, haec, hoc, gen., huius, dem. pron., *this*.
 hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *pass the winter, winter*.
 hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather*.
 hīnc, adv., *from this place*.
 hodiē, adj., *today*.
 homō, -inis, m. and f., *human being, man*.
 honor, -ōris, m., *honor, esteem, glory*.
 hōra, -ae, f., *hour*.
 hortus, -ī, m., *garden*.
 hostis, -is, m., *enemy; pl., the enemy*.
 hūc, adv., *hither*.
 hūmānitās, -ātis, f., *refinement, humanity*.

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., *human*.
humus, -ī, f., *earth, soil; grave*.

I

iaciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactus**, *throw, throw up, banish*.

iam, adv., *already*.

iānitor, -ōris, m., *doorkeeper, porter*.

iānua, -ae, f., *door*.

ibi, adv., *there, in that place*.

Iccius, -ī, m., a leader of the Remi.

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, dem. pron., *same*.

idōneus, -a, -um (comp., **magis idōneus**; sup., **maximē idōneus**), adj., *fit, suitable*.

Iēsus, -ī, m., *Jesus*.

igitur, conj., *therefore*.

ignis, -is, m., *fire*.

ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown*.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, dem. pron., *that*.

illō, adv., *to that place*.

immolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *sacrifice*.

immortālis, -e, adj., *immortal*.

impār, -paris, adj., *unequal*.

impedimentum, -ī, n., *hindrance; pl., heavy baggage*.

impediō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, *hinder*.

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *urge on, incite*.

impendeō, -ēre, —, —, *hang over*.

imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander-in-chief, general, emperor*.

imperātum, -ī, n., *command, order*.

imperium, -ī, n., *command, control, military authority, empire*.

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *order (governs dat., followed by ut with the subjunctive)*.

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *obtain by request*.

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack*.

impluvium, -ī, n., *impluvium (the square basin in which the rain water was received)*.

impudens, -ntis, adj., *impudent*.

impūne, adv., *without punishment*.

in, prep. (with abl.), *in, on, upon, across, over; (with acc.), into, against, upon*.

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *set on fire, burn*.

incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *begin, undertake*.

inclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *keep in*.

incola, -ae, f., *inhabitant*.

incolō, -ere, -uī, —, (intrans.), *live, dwell; (trans.), inhabit, dwell in*.

incrēdibilis, -e, adj., *incredible*.

ineō, -īre, -iī (-īvi), -itus, *enter, begin*.

inferō, -ferre, **intulī**, **illātus**, *bring in, upon, or against; bellum inferre, make war on; signa inferre, advance (to the attack)*.

inferus, -ī, m., *inhabitant of the lower world*.

inferus, -a, -um (comp., **inferior**; sup., **īnfirmus** or **īmus**), adj., *low*.

īnfinītum, -ī, n., *that which is boundless, infinity*.

īnfluō, -ere, -fluxī, -fluxus, *flow into*.

īnimīcus, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly*.

īnimīcus, -ī, m., *a personal enemy*.

īnīquus, -a, -um, *uneven, unfavorable*.

īnitium, -ī, n., *beginning*.

iniūria, -ae, f., *injury, wrong*.
 inopia, -ae, f., *want, scarcity*.
 inquam, inquis, inquit, *say*.
 insidiae, -ārum, f., *ambush*.
 insidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lie in wait*.
 institūtum, -ī, n., *institution, custom*.
 instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *draw up, construct, furnish*.
 insula, -ae, f., *island*.
 intellegō, -ere, -ēxī, -lēctus, *understand*.
 inter, prep. (with acc.), *between, among*.
 intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *intervene*.
 intereā, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile*.
 interest, impers., *it concerns*.
 interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *kill*.
 interim, adv., *in the meantime*.
 interior, -ius (sup., intimus), adj., *inner*.
 interscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, *cut down, destroy*.
 intersum, -esse, -fuī, *take part in*.
 intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enter*.
 introducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead into*.
 inūtilis, -e, adj., *useless*.
 inventor, -ōris, m., *inventor*.
 invictus, -a, -um, adj., *unconquerable, invincible*.
 invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*.
 invocō, -āre, -āvī, -atus, *call upon, invoke*.
 iocus, -ī, m., *joke*.
 ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen., ipsius, dem. pron., *self, himself, etc.*

is, ea, id, gen., eius, dem. pron., *that, he*.
 iste, ista, istud, gen., istius, dem. pron., *that, that of yours*.
 ita, adv., *so (manner)*.
 Italia, -ae, f., *Italy*.
 itaque, adv., *and so*.
 item, adv., *in like manner*.
 iter, itineris, n., *journey, march*.
 iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, command*.
 iūcundus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful*.
 Iūdaeī, -ōrum, m., *Jews*.
 iūdex, -icis, m., *judge*.
 iūdicium, -ī, n., *decision*.
 iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *judge*.
 iugum, -ī, n., *yoke, (of mountains) ridge, summit*.
 Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia*.
 iumentum, -ī, n., *beast of burden*.
 iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus, *join*.
 Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*.
 Iūra, -ae, m., *Jura (a range of mountains)*.

iūs, iūris, n., *right, law*.
 iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, n., *oath*.
 iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice*.
 iuvenis, -e (comp., iūnior; sup., minimus nātū), adj., *young*.
 iuventūs, -ūtis, f., *youth*.
 iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid, assist*.

L

L. = Lūcius.
 Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Titus Labienus, Caesar's lieutenant*.
 labor, -ōris, m., *toil, labor*.
 labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *labor*.
 lacessō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, *arouse, provoke, harm*.

lacus, -ūs, m, *lake*.
 laetitia, -ae, f., *joy*.
 lapis, -idis, m., *stone*.
 lapsus, -ūs, m., *a slip, error*.
 lātē, adv., *widely*.
 lātitudō, -inis, f., *width*.
 latus, -eris, n., *side*.
 lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide*.
 laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *praise*.
 laus, laudis, f., *praise*.
 lectus, -ī, m., *couch, bed*.
 lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant, am-*
bassador.
 legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*.
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *read,*
choose.
 Lemannus, -ī, m., *Geneva*.
 lentē, adv., *slowly*.
 Lentulus, -ī, m., *Lentulus*.
 lepus, -oris, m., *hare*.
 levis, -e, adj., *light (in weight)*.
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.
 libenter, adv., *gladly*.
 liber, librī, m., *book*.
 liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free*.
 liberī, -ōrum, m., *children*.
 liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *set free*.
 libertās, -ātis, f., *freedom, liberty*.
 licet, -ēre, -uit, impers. (with
 dat.), *it is permitted*.
 limen, -inis, n., *threshold*.
 lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.
 littera, -ae, f., *letter of the alphabet;*
 pl., *letter, an epistle, literature*.
 litus, -oris, n., *shore (of the sea)*.
 locus, -ī, m., pl., loca, n., *place,*
location.
 longē, adv., *far, by far; quam*
longē, how far.
 longitūdō, -inis, f., *length*.
 longus, -a, -um, adj., *long, tall*.

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak,*
say.
 lūdus, -ī, m., *game, play*.
 lūmen, -inis, n., *light*.
 lūna, -ae, f., *moon*.
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light*.

M

maculō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spot,*
spoil.
 Maecēnās, -ātis, m., *Maecenas,*
a famous Roman patron of let-
ters, hence any patron of letters.
 magister, -trī, m., *teacher*.
 magnitūdō, -inis, f., *greatness, size*.
 magnopere (comp., magis; sup.,
 maximē), adv., *greatly*.
 magnus, -a, -um (maior, maxi-
 mus), adj., *large, great*.
 maiōrēs, -um, m. pl., *forefathers,*
ancestors.
 maleficiū, -ī, n., *harm*.
 mālō, mālī, mālūī (magis and
 volō), *prefer*.
 malum, -ī, n., *evil*.
 malus, -a, -um, (comp., peior;
 sup., pessimus), adj., *bad*.
 mandātum, ī, n., *commission,*
order.
 mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *com-*
mand.
 maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus,
remain.
 mānsuētūdō, -inis, f., *compassion*.
 manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band*.
 Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus*.
 mare, -is, n., *sea*.
 marmoreus, -a, -um, adj., *made of*
marble.
 Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars*.
 māter, -tris, f., *mother*.

Matrona, -ae, f., *Marne* (river).
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make haste, hasten*.

maximē, see **magnopere**.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle*;
mediā nocte, *midnight*; **mediō colle**, *halfway up the hill*.

meī (gen.), reflex. pron., *of myself*.

membrum, -ī, n., *limb*.

memoria, -ae, f., *memory*.

Menapii, -ōrum, m., a *Belgic people*.

mēns, mentis, f., *mind, purpose*.

mēnsa, -ae, f., *table*.

mercātor, -ōris, m., *merchant*.

mercātūra, -ae, f., *trade*.

Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury*.

mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *deserve*.

meridiēs, -ēī, m., *midday, noon*.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *my, mine*.

miles, -itis, m., *soldier*.

mīlia, -ium, n., *thousands*.

mille, adj., indecl., *a thousand*.

Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva*.

ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *attend*.

ministerium, -ī, n., *office, service*.

minor, *less*; see **parvus**.

minus, adv., *less, not*.

mīrābilis, -e, adj., *wonderful*.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched*.

mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, *send*.

modus, -ī, m., *manner*.

moenia, -ium, n., *fortifications, walls of a city*.

molestus, -a, -um, adj., *troublesome, irksome*.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *advise, warn*.

mōns, montis, m., *mountain*.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *show*.

montānus, -ī, m., *mountaineer*.

monumentum, -ī, n., *monument*.

mora, -ae, f., *delay*.

morbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness*.

Morini, -ōrum, m., a *Belgic people*.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die*.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *delay*.

mors, mortis, f., *death*.

mōs, mōris, m., *custom*; pl., *character, manners, habits*.

mōtus, -ūs, m., *movement, revolt*.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move*;
 with **castra**, *break up*.

mox, adv., *soon*.

mulier, -eris, f., *woman*.

multitūdō, -inis, f., *great number, multitude*.

multus, -a, -um, *much*; pl., *many*.

mundus, -ī, m., *world*.

mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, *fortify*.

mūnitīō, -ōnis, f., *fortification*.

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall*.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change*.

N

nam, conj., *for*.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tell*.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *be born*.

Nāsica, -ae, m., *Nāsica*.

Naso, ōnis, m., *Naso, P. Ovidius Naso, the Roman poet, Ovid*.

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *nation*.

nātūra, -ae, f., *nature*.

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor*.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sail*.

nāvis, -is, f., *ship*.

Nazarēnus, -a, -um, *of Nazareth*.

nē, conj., *that not, lest*; **ne**, interrog. particle (enclitic); **nē**

- ... **quidem**, *not . . . even*, the emphatic word standing between **nē** and **quidem**.
- nec**, conj., *and not*.
- negō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deny, say not*.
- negōtium**, -ī, n., *business, trouble*.
- nēmō**, —, dat., **nēminī**, m., *no one*.
- neque**, conj., *neither*; **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.
- Nerviī**, -ōrum, m., *the Nerviī, a warlike Belgic people*.
- neuter**, -tra, -trum, gen., **neutrius**, adj., *neither*.
- niger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *black*.
- nihil**, also **nil**, indecl., n., *nothing*.
- nisi**, conj., *if not, unless, except*.
- nōbilis**, -e, adj., *noble, high rank*.
- noceō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *do harm, injure*.
- nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, *to be unwilling*.
- nōmen**, -inis, n., *name*.
- nōn**, adv., *not*.
- nōndum**, adv., *not yet*.
- nōnne**, interrog. particle, expecting the answer "*yes*."
- nōnnūllus**, -a, -um, adj., *some*.
- nōnnumquam**, adv., *sometimes*.
- nōn solum**, . . . **sed etiam**, adv., *not only, . . . but also*.
- nōs**, **nostrum**, pron., *we*.
- nōscō**, -ere, **nōvī**, **nōtus**, *learn, know*.
- noster**, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *our, ours*.
- notō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mark, note*.
- nōtus**, -a, -um, adj. *familiar*.
- novem**, num. adj., indecl., *nine*.
- Noviodūnum**, -ī, n., *a town of the Suessiones*.
- novissimī**, -ōrum, m., *those in the rear*.
- novus**, -a, -um, adj., *new*; **novus miles**, *recruit*.
- nox**, **noctis**, f., *night*.
- nubila**, -ōrum, n., *clouds*.
- nūdō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *strip, leave unprotected*.
- nūllus**, -a, -um, gen., **nūllius**, adj., *no, none, no one*.
- num**, interrog. particle, expecting the answer "*no*"; *whether*.
- nūmen**, -inis, n., *divinity*.
- numerus**, -ī, m., *number, account*.
- numquam**, adv., *never*.
- nunc**, adv., *now*.
- nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, report*.
- nūntius**, -ī, m., *messenger, message*.

O

- ob**, prep. with acc., *on account of*.
- obducō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *extend*.
- obses**, -idis, m. and f., *hostage, pledge, security*.
- obtemperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *obey*.
- occāsus**, -ūs, m., *setting*.
- occidō**, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *kill, slay*.
- occultō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hide*.
- occupō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, take possession of*.
- occurrō**, -ere, -currī, -cursus, *meet*.
- octō**, num. adj., indecl., *eight*.
- officium**, -ī, n., *office, official employment, duty*.
- olus**, -eris, n., *vegetables, greens*.
- ōmen**, -inis, n., *omen*.

omninō, adv., *in all*.
 omnis, -e, adj., *all, every*.
 onus, -eris, n., *burden, weight*.
 opera, -ae, f., *work*.
 operor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *work*.
 opiniō, -ōnis, f., *belief, reputation, expectation*.
 oppidānī, -ōrum, m., *townspeople*.
 oppidum, -ī, n., *town*.
 opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *weigh down*.
 oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., *assault, besieging*.
 oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *storm, attack, besiege*.
 optimus, *excellent*; see bonus.
 opus, operis, n., *work, labor*.
 ōra, -ae, f., *coast*; ōra maritima, *sea coast*.
 ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, oration*.
 ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *appoint, settle*.
 ōrdō, -inis, m., *rank, order, row*.
 orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *spring from, rise*.
 ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *ornament, jewel*.
 ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *adorn*.
 ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *show*.
 ostium, -ī, n., *door, entrance*.

P

pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder*.
 pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pacify, subdue*.
 paene, adv., *almost, nearly*.
 pāgina, -ae, f., *page*.
 Palātium, -ī, n., *Palatine hill*.
 palma, -ae, f., *palm, reward*.
 palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*.

pandō, -ere, pandī, passus, *stretch out*.
 parcō, ere, pepercī, parsus, *to spare*.
 pār, paris, adj., *equal*.
 parēns, -entis, m. and f., *parent*.
 pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *obey*.
 pariēs, -etis, m., *wall (of a house)*.
 parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare*.
 pars, partis, f., *part, side, direction*.
 parum (comp., minus; sup. minimē), adv., *little, too little*.
 parvulus, -a, -um, *tiny*.
 parvus, -a, -um (comp., minor; sup., minimus), adj., *small*.
 passus, -ūs, m., *pace*; mille passūs, *a mile*.
 pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie open, extend*.
 pater, -tris, m., *father*.
 patior, pati, passus sum, *suffer, permit*.
 patria, -ae, f., *native land*.
 paucī, -ae, -a, adj., *few*.
 paulisper, adv., *for a short time*.
 paulō, adv., *by a little, a little*.
 paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat*.
 pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.
 pecūnia, -ae, f., *riches, wealth*.
 pedes, -itis, m., *foot soldier*; pl., *infantry*.
 Pedius, -ī, m., *Quintus Pedius*.
 peior, peius, *worse*; see malus.
 pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive out, put to flight, defeat*.
 pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *pay*.
 pēninsula, -ae, f., *peninsula*.
 per, prep. (with acc.), *through, by, on account of*.
 perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, construct*.

- perfectus, -a, -um, adj., *perfect*.
 perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *report*.
 perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *finish*.
 periclitōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, *prove, make trial of*.
 periculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril*.
 peristylum, -ī, n., *peristyle*.
 permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *intrust, commit*.
 permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *alarm, influence*.
 perpaucī, -ae, -a, adj., *very few*.
 perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break through*.
 persōna, -ae, f., *character*.
 perspicīō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *look, observe*.
 persuādēō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade, governs the dat. followed by ut with the subjunctive*.
 pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —, *extend*.
 perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disturb greatly*.
 perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *arrive (at)*.
 pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.
 petō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -ītus, *seek, ask; takes acc. of the thing and abl. of the person*.
 Phoebus, -ī, m., *Phoebus*.
 pictūra, -ae, f., *picture*.
 pilum, -ī, n., *javelin*.
 placeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, *please; used impersonally, placet, it seems good*.
 placidus, -a, -um, adj., *calm*.
 Plancus, -ī, m., *Plancus*.
 plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full*.
 plērique, -ōrumque, m., *the majority, most*.
 plērumque, adv., *generally*.
 plūrēs, -ium, adj., *more, several*.
 plūrimus, see *multus*.
 plūs posse, *to be more powerful; plūrimum posse, to be most powerful, have great influence*.
 pluvia, -ae, f., *rain*.
 poēta, -ae, m., *poet*.
 polliceor, -ērī, -ītus sum, *promise (with fut. infin.)*.
 Pompēius, -ī, m., *Pompey*.
 pōmum, -ī, n., *fruit, apple*.
 pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, place; (with castra), pitch*.
 pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.
 pontifex, -icis, m., *pontifex (a Roman high priest)*.
 popolor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lay waste, devastate*.
 populus, -ī, m., *people, nation*.
 porta, -ae, f., *gate*.
 portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry*.
 portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port*.
 poscō, -ere, poposci, — *demand*.
 possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *occupy, possess*.
 possum, posse, potuī, *can, able*.
 post, adv., *afterwards, after*.
 post, prep. (with acc.) (of place), *behind; (of time), after*.
 posteritās, -ātis, f., *posterity*.
 posterus, -a, -um (comp., posterior; sup., postrēmus), adj., *following, last*.
 postquam, conj., *after, after that*.
 postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *claim, demand*.
 potēns, potentis, adj., *powerful*.
 potestās, -tātis, f., *power, opportunity*.

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *get possession of.*

praeambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk before.*

praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *surpass.*

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *place over or in command of.*

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send ahead.*

praemium, -ī, n., *reward.*

praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -itus, *place in command of.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *guard, garrison.*

praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, *excel; to be responsible for; impers.,*

praestat, it is better; officium praestāre, to do one's duty.

praesum, -esse, -fui, *have command of, be at the head of.*

praeter, prep. (with acc.), *except.*

praeterquam, adv., *besides, other than.*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *press; pass., be weighed down.*

primus, -a, -um, adj., *first, chief;*

primā lūce, at daybreak; quam

primum, as soon as possible;

primō, at first.

princeps, -cipis, m., *chief.*

prior, -ius, adj., *former.*

privātus, -a, -um, adj., *private.*

prō, prep. (with abl.), *in front of, in proportion to.*

for, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{instead of.} \\ \text{in defense of.} \\ \text{in behalf of.} \end{array} \right.$

probō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, *approve.*

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *surrender.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure.*

prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *go forward.*

proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum, *set out.*

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *flee.*

prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *advance.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *keep off, hinder, prohibit.*

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw forward; sē prōicere, leap down.*

prōmō, -ere, -prōmpsī, prōmptus, *bring forth, produce, render.*

prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move forward, promote.*

prope, adv., *near, nearly, almost.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hurry, hasten.*

propior, -ius, (sup., proximus), adj., *nearer; proximā nocte, on the following night.*

proprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own.*

propter (with acc.), *on account of.*

propterea quod, *because.*

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow, pursue.*

prōtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *protect.*

prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus, *provide.*

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*

proximē, adv., *next, most recently.*

proximus, -a, -um, *next; see propior.*

psallō, -ere, -ī, —, *play the harp; rejoice.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, *public.*

puella, -ae, f., *girl.*

puer, puerī, m., *boy.*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful.*

pulchrē, adv., *beautifully*.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, believe*.

Q

Q. = Quintus.

quā, adv., *where*.

quadringenti, -ae, -a, *four hundred*.

quaerō, -ere, -sīvi, -sītus, *ask, seek*; takes the acc. of the thing and the abl. of the person with ē, ex, ā, ab, or dē.

quaestus, -ūs, m., *getting of money, gain*.

quam, adv. and conj., *than, as*; with superlatives, *as much as possible*; *how*.

quamobrem, adv., *why*.

quantō opere, *how much*.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how great, how much*.

quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth*.

quattuor, num. adj., indecl., *four*.

que (an enclitic), *and*.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, that*.

quia, conj., *because*.

quicquid (quisquis), n., *whatever*.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron., *whoever*.

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pron., *a certain one*.

quīēs, -ētis, f., *repose*.

quīn, conj., *that not, but that*.

quīndecim, indecl., num. adj., *fifteen*.

quīnquāgintā, num. adj. indecl., *fifty*.

quīnque, num. adj., indecl., *five*.

quīntus, -a, -um, *fifth*.

quis, quid, interrog. pron., *who?*

what? quī, quae, quod, used adjectively.

quispiam, —, quidpiam, indef. pron., *any one, anything*.

quisquam, —, quicquam, indef. pron., *any one, anything*.

quisque, quidque, *each one, every one*.

quō, adv., *where*.

quod, conj., *because*; *that*.

quōmodō, interrog. adv., *how?*

quoque, conj., *also*.

quot, adj., indecl., *how many?*

R

rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptus, *seize, carry off*.

ratis, -is, f., *raft*.

ratus, -a, -um, *reckoned, fixed by calculation*.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, receptus, *take back, receive*; with sē, *retreat, recover*.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refuse*.

redūcō, -ere, redūxī, reductus, *lead back, withdraw*.

referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus, *bring back, report, reconsider*.

rēgīna, -ae, f., *queen*.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, boundary*.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rule*.

rēgnum, -ī, n., *royal power, kingdom*.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, *rule, manage*.

reiciō, -ere, reiēcī, reiectus, *throw back, repulse*.

relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictus, *leave*.

reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest*.

Rēmus, -ī, m., *one of the Remi*.
remittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *send back*.
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, *repulse*.
reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertus, *find, discover*.
requiēscō, -ere, requiēvi, requiētus, *rest, repose*.
requirō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitus, *require*.
rēs, rei, f., *thing, affair*.
resistō, -ere, restiti, —, *resist, oppose*.
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, respōnsus, *answer, reply, respond*.
rēs pública, rei públicae, f., *state, republic*.
retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *restrain, detain, retain*.
revertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, and **revector**, -ī, reversus sum, *turn back, return*; the perfect stem tenses are from the active forms, the others from the deponent.
rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.
Rhēnus, -ī, m., *Rhine*.
Rhodanus, -ī, m., *Rhone*.
rīpa, -ae, f., *bank (of a river)*.
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask*.
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman*; as a subst., **Rōmānus**, -ī, m., *a Roman*.
rosa, -ae, f., *rose*.
rōstrum, -ī, n., *beak*; pl., *rostra*.
ruīna, -ae, f., *ruin*.
rūmor, -ōris, m., *rumor, report*.
rūrsus, adv., *again, anew*.

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., *Sabines*.
Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Sabinus*.
sacer, sacra, sacrum, adj., *sacred*.
saepe, adv., *often*.
sagittārius, -ī, m., *archer, bowman*.
sāl, -is, m., *salt*.
saltus, -ūs, m., *leap, bound*.
salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*.
salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *salute*.
salvātor, -ōris, m., *savior*.
salveō, -ēre, —, —, *to be well*; **salve** (imperative), *welcome*.
salvus, -a, -um, adj., *safe*; **salvam fac**, *keep, preserve, save*.
sānus, -a, -um, adj., *sound, sane*.
sapiens, -entis, m., *a wise person*.
sapienter, adv., *wisely*.
satis, (also **sat**), adv., *enough, sufficient*.
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge*.
sciō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus, *know*.
scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, *write*.
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.
secundus, -a, -um, *second, following*.
sēcūrus, -a, -um, adj., *safe, secure*.
sed, conj., *but*.
sēmentis, -is, f., *sowing*.
semper, adv., *always, ever*.
senātor, -ōris, m., *senator*.
senectūs, -ūtis, f., *old age*.
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*.
senex, -is, (comp., **senior**; sup., **maximus nātū**), adj., *old*.
Senonēs, -um, m., *a people of Gaul*.
septem, num. adj., indecl., *seven*.
Sēquanā, -ae, f., *the Seine*.
Sēquanus, -ī, m., *a Sequanian*.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*.

serva, -ae, f., *slave (female)*.

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *be slave to, serve*.

servitūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery*.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, protect, maintain, keep*.

servus, -ī, m., *slave, servant*.

sescentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *six hundred*.

sex, num. adj., indecl., *six*.

sexāgintā, num. adj., indecl., *sixty*.

sī, conj., *if*.

sic, adv., *so (manner), in this way*.

sīdus, -eris, n., *constellation; pl., heavenly bodies*.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *show, indicate*.

signum, -ī, n., *signal, standard*.

silva, -ae, f., *forest, woods*.

similis, -e, adj., *like, similar*.

simul, adv., *at once, as soon as*.

simulācrum, -ī, n., *image, statue*.

simulāns, -antis, adj., *pretending*.

sine, prep. (with abl.), *without*.

singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *one by one*.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left*.

sīquis, sīqua, sīquid, *if any one or thing*.

situs, -ūs, m., *situation*.

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun; sōlis occāsū, at sunset*.

solum, -ī, n., *ground, floor*.

sōlus, -a, -um, gen., sōlius, *only, alone*.

soror, -ōris, f., *sister*.

spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus, *scatter*.

Sparta, -ae, f., *Sparta*.

Spartānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spartan*.

spatium, -ī, n., *space, time*.

speculātor, -ōris, m., *scout*.

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hope*.

spēs, speī, f., *hope*.

spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe*.

stabiliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *make firm, establish*.

statim, adv., *immediately*.

statua, -ae, f., *statue*.

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *determine*.

status, -ūs, m., *state, condition*.

stella, -ae, f., *star*.

stilus, -ī, n., *stilus; pen*.

stō, -āre, steti, stātus, *stand*.

strepitus, -ūs, m., *noise, uproar*.

studium, -ī, n., *pursuit*.

sub, prep. (with acc. after verbs of motion), *under*; (with abl. to denote place at which), *at the foot of, under*; (with words denoting time), *about, towards*.

submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send secretly*.

subruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *undermine*.

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow close upon*.

subsidium, -ī, n., *aid, support*.

succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *approach*.

Suēbī, -ōrum, m., *Swabians*.

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., *Suessiones*.

suī, (gen.), reflex. pron., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*.

sum, esse, fuī, be.

summus, see superus.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, assume, put on*.

super, prep., *over, above*.

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *surpass, conquer, overcome, excel.*

supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *refrain from.*

supersum, -esse, -fuī, *be left over, survive.*

superus, -ī, m., *inhabitant of the upper world.*

superus, -a, -um, (comp., **superior**; sup., **suprēmus** or **summus**), *high.*

suppetō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, *be at hand.*

supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment.*

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion.*

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *check, withstand, sustain.*

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his, her, their, etc.*

T

T. = Titus.

taberna, -ae, f., *shop, booth.*

tablinum, -ī, n., *tablinum* (apartment of a Roman house where the family records were kept).

tabula, -ae, f., *tablet, document.*

tam, adv. of degree, *so.*

tamen, conj., *nevertheless, still.*

tantum, adv., *only.*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such.*

Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia.*

tectum, -ī, n., *roof.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *dart, weapon.*

tempestās, -tātis, f., *storm, bad weather.*

templum, -ī, n., *temple.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time.*

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus or **tēnsus**, *extend.*

teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, *hold.*

tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *attempt.*

terra, -ae, f., *earth, land.*

tertius, -a, -um, *third.*

testūdō, -inis, f., *testudo.*

Tiberius, -ī, m., *Tiberius.*

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear, dread.*

Titurius, -ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus.*

toga, -ae, f., *toga.*

togātus, -a, -um, *wearing a toga.*

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, *remove.*

tormentum, -ī, n., *engine of war.*

totidem, adj., *just as many.*

tōtus, -a, -um, gen., tōtius, *whole.*

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, surrender, impart, hand down, teach.*

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across.*

tranquillitās, -ātis, f., *tranquillity.*

trāns, prep. (with acc.), *across* (on the farther side of).

trānseō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itus, *go across, cross.*

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry across.*

trānsversus, -a, -um, adj., *cross-wise, oblique.*

trēs, trēs, tria, *three.*

tribūtum, -ī, n., *tax, tribute.*

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl., *thirty.*

tū, tuī, pers. pron., *you.*

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*

tuī (gen.), reflex. pron., *of yourself.*

tum, adv., *then.*

tumultus, -ūs, m., *disturbance, tumult.*

tumulus, -ī, m., *mound.*

turba, -ae, f., uproar, commotion;
crowd.

turris, -is, f., tower.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., your,
yours.

tyrannus, -ī, m., tyrant.

U

ubi, interrog. adv., where; rel.
adv., when, where.

ūllus, -a, -um, gen., ūllius, any.

ulterior, -ius, (sup., ultimus), adj.,
farther.

ultimus, -a, -um, last, extreme.

ūnā, adv., along with.

undique, adv., on all sides.

ūniō, -īre, -iī, -ītus, unite.

ūniversī, -ōrum, m., all together.

ūnus, -a, -um, gen., ūnīus, one;
pl., only, alone.

urbs, urbis, f., city.

ūsus, -ūs, m., use.

ut, conj., that, in order that,
as (when followed by indica-
tive).

uter, utra, utrum, gen., utrīus,
adj., which (of two).

uterque, -traque, -trumque, each,
every.

utī, see ut.

ūtilis, -e (comp., -ior; sup., -issi-
mus), adj., useful.

utinam, adv., would that, O that.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use.

utrimque, adv., on both sides.

utrum, conj., not translated in
direct questions; in indirect
questions, whether.

V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., empty;
vacuus ab, destitute of.

vadum, -ī, n., shoal, ford.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, wander.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, —, be powerful,
strong.

vāllum, -ī, n., rampart.

valor, -ōris, m., value.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, lay waste.

vel, conj., or; vel . . . vel, either
. . . or.

Veliocassēs, -ium, m., the Velio-
casses.

vēlōciter (comp., vēlōcius; sup.,
vēlōcissimē), adv., swiftly.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, adj., swift.

vēlum, -ī, n., curtain.

venerātiō, -ōnis, f., worship.

Venetī, -ōrum, m., Veneti.

veniō, -īre, vēmī, ventus, come.

ventus, -ī, m., wind.

verbum, -ī, n., word.

vereor, -ērī, -ītus sum, fear,
dread.

vērō, adv., in truth, but.

vēritās, -ātis, f., truth.

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true.

Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta.

Vestālis, -e, adj., Vestal.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron.,
your, yours.

vēstibulum, -ī, n., vestibule.

vēstīgium, -ī, n., trace, vestige.

via, -ae, f., road, way, journey.

vice, f. (abl. of vicis, change), in
turn.

victōr, -ōris, m., victor, conqueror.

victōria, -ae, f., victory.

vīcus, -ī, m., *village*.

videō, -ēre, **vidī**, **visus**, *see*.

videor, -ēri, **vīsus sum**, *seem, appear*.

vigilia, -ae, f., *watch* (part of the night).

vīgintī, num. adj., indecl., *twenty*.

vincō, -ere, **vīcī**, **victus**, *conquer, defeat*.

vīnea, -ae, f., *vine*.

vir, -ī, m., *man*.

virgō, -inis, f., *virgin, maiden*.

Viromandui, -ōrum, m., *Viro-mandui*.

virtūs, -tūtis, f., *virtue, valor, courage, bravery*.

vīs (gen. and dat. sing. wanting),

vīm, **vī**, f., *force*; pl., **virēs**, **virium**, etc., *strength*.

vīta, -ae, f., *life*.

vitiātus, -a, -um, *spoiled, tainted*.

vitiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spoil, taint*.

vīvō, -ere, **vīxī**, **vīctus**, *live*.

vix, adv., *scarcely*.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call*.

volō, **velle**, **voluī**, —, *be willing, wish*.

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fly*.

Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Volusen*.

vōtum, -ī, n., *vow, wish*.

vōx, **vōcis**, f., *voice*; pl., *words*.

vulgus, -ī, n., *the crowd*.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wound*.

vulnus, -eris, n., *wound*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

ability, *facultās, -tātis, f.*
able, *possum, posse, potuī, —.*
about, *dē, with abl.; ad, circum,*
with acc.
abundance, *cōpia, -ae, f.*
accept, *accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
accomplish, *cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus;*
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
across, *trāns, with acc.; in, with*
abl., see 232.²
act, *agō, agere, ēgī, āctus.*
active, *ācer, ācris, ācre.*
advance, *prōgredior, -ī, -gressus*
sum; signa īnferre.
advise, *moneō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus.*
affair, *rēs, rei, f.*
after, *post.*
again, *rūrsus.*
against, *in, contrā, with acc.*
ago, *ante.*
aid, *auxilium, auxili, n.; subsi-*
dium, subsidī, n.
all, *omnis, -e.*
allow, *pator, patī, passus sum.*
almost, *prope, paene, ferē.*
alone, *sōlus, -a, -um.*
already, *iam.*
although, *cum.*
always, *semper.*
ambassador, *lēgātus, -ī, m.*
Ambiani, *Ambiānī, -ōrum, m.*

among, *inter, with acc.*
and, *et, ac, atque, -que.*
anew, *rūrsus.*
animal, *animal, -ālis, n.*
announce, *nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
another, *alius, alia, aliud.*
answer, *respondeō, -ēre, -dī, re-*
spōnsus.
any, *ūllus, -a, -um.*
approach, *n., adventus, -ūs, m.*
approach, *v., adeō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.*
Aquitania, *Aquītānia, -ae, f.*
Ariovistus, *Ariovistus, -ī, m.*
arms, *arma, -ōrum, n.*
army, *exercitus, -ūs, m.*
around, *circum, with acc.*
arrange, *ordinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
arrival, *adventus, -ūs, m.*
as, . . . *ut.*
as soon as, *cum primum.*
ascertain, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī,*
-nitus; reperiō, -īre, repperī,
reptus.
ask, *petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus; quaerō,*
-ere, -sīvī, -sītus.
assemble, *conveniō, -īre, -vēnī,*
-ventus.
assembly, *conventus, -ūs, m.*
assert, *cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
associate, *comes, -itis, m. and f.*
assume, *sūmō, -ere, sumpsī,*
sumptus.
at, *abl. of time or place, locative.*

attack, *n.*, *impetus*, -ūs, *m.*
 attack, *v.*, *oppugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 attempt, *cōnor*, -ārī, -ātus *sum*.
 authority, *auctoritās*, -tātis, *f.*
 auxiliary forces, *auxilia*, -ōrum, *n.*

B

bad, *malus*, -a, -um.
 band, *manus*, -ūs, *f.*
 bank, *rīpa*, -ae, *f.*
 battle, *proelium*, *proelī*, *n.*
 be, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, —.
 bear, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*.
 beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.
 because, *quod*.
 become, *fīō*, *fierī*, *factus sum*.
 before, *ante*, with *acc.*
 begin, *coepī*, *coepisse*; *incipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus; *ineō*, -īre, -iī, -ītus.
 beginning, *initium*, *initī*, *n.*
 behalf of, *prō*, with *abl.*
 behind, *post*, with *acc.*
 Belgians, *Belgae*, -ārum, *m.*
 believe, *crēdō*, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
 Bellovacī, *Bellovacī*, -ōrum, *m.*
 besides, *praeterquam*.
 besiege, *oppugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 best, *optimus*, -a, -um.
 better (it is), *praestat*.
 better, *melior*, -ius.
 between, *inter*, with *acc.*
 black, *niger*, -gra, -grum.
 blame, *culpō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 body, *corpus*, -oris, *n.*
 book, *liber*, *librī*, *m.*
 born (be), *nāscor*, *nāscī*, *nātus sum*.
 both . . . and, *et* . . . *et*.
 boundary, *regiō*, -ōnis, *f.*; *fīnis*, -is, *m.*

boy, *puer*, -ī, *m.*
 brave, *fortis*, -e.
 bravely, *fortiter*.
 bravery, *virtūs*, -tūtis, *f.*
 break (camp), *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtus*.
 bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, *m.*
 brief, *brevis*, -e.
 bring, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*; *afferō*, -ferre, *attulī*, *allātus*.
 bring back, *redūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; *referō*, -ferre, *rettulī*, *relātus*.
 bring in or upon, *īnferō*, -ferre, *intulī*, *illātus*.
 bring out, *effērō*, -ferre, *extulī*, *elātus*.
 bring together, *cōnferō*, -ferre, -tulī, *collātus*.
 bring (war on), *īnferō*, -ferre, -tulī, *illātus*.
 broad, *lātus*, -a, -um.
 brother, *frāter*, -tris, *m.*
 Brutus, *Brūtus*, -ī, *m.*
 build, *aedificō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 building, *aedificium*, *aedificī*, *n.*
 burn, *incendō*, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.
 but, *sed*.
 by, *ā*, *ab*, with *abl.*

C

Caesar, *Caesar*, -aris, *m.*
 call, *vocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 call together, *convocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 camp, *castra*, -ōrum, *n.*
 can, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, —.
 captive, *captīvus*, -ī, *m.*
 capture, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captus*; *expugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 care, *diligentia*, -ae, *f.*

carefully, *diligenter*.
 carry, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*; *portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.
 carry away, *effērō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus*.
 carry on war, *bellum gerō*.
 carry out, *effērō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus*.
 Cassius, *Cassius, -ī, m.*
 Catiline, *Catilīna, -ae, m.*
 Cato, *Catō, -ōnis, m.*
 cause, *causa, -ae, f.*
 cavalry, pl. of *eques, -itis, m.*; *equitātus, -ūs, m.*
 censure, *culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.
 centurion, *centuriō, -ōnis, m.*
 certain, *adj., certus, -a, -um*.
 certain one, *pron., quīdam, quaedam, quiddam*.
 character, pl. of *mōs, mōris, m.*
 check, *sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus*.
 chief, *prīnceps, -cipis, m.*
 children, *liberī, -ōrum, m.*
 choose, *dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus*.
 Cicero, *Cicerō, -ōnis, m.*
 citizen, *cīvis, -is, m. and f.*
 city, *urbs, urbis, f.*
 close, *claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus*.
 cohort, *cohors, cohortis, f.*
 collect, *cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, col-lātus; cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus*.
 come, *veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus*.
 command, *n., imperiū, imperī, n.*
 command, *v., imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus*.
 command of (be in), *praesum, -esse, -fuī*.
 commander-in-chief, *imperātor, -ōris, m.*
 companion, *comes, -itis, m. and f.*

compel, *cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus*.
 conceal, *cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.
 concerning, *dē, with abl.*
 confidence, *fidēs, -eī, f.*
 conquer, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus*.
 conqueror, *victor, -ōris, m.*
 consider, *cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; habeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus*.
 construct, *īnstruō, -ere, -struī, -strūctus*.
 consul, *cōsul, -ulis, m.*
 contend, *contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentus*.
 control, *imperium, imperī, n.*
 country, *patria, -ae, f.; fīnēs, -iū, m.*
 courage, *virtūs, -ūtis, f.*
 cover, *compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus*.
 Crassus, *Crassus, -ī, m.*
 cross, *trānseō, -īre, -īvī (-ī), -ītus*.
 custom, *mōs, mōris, m.*

D

daily, *adj., cotīdiānus, -a, -um*.
 daily, *adv., cotīdiē*.
 danger, *perīculum, -ī, n.*
 dare, *audeō, -ēre, ausus sum*.
 daughter, *filia, -ae, f.*
 day, *diēs, diē, m. and f.*; late in the day, *multō diē*; following day, *posterō diē*.
 daybreak, *at, prīmā lūce*.
 dear, *cārus, -a, -um*.
 death, *mors, mortis, f.*
 deceive, *fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus*.
 decide, *cōstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus; statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus*.
 declare, *cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.
 deep, *altus, -a, -um*.
 defeat, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus*.

defend, *dēfendō*, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.

defender, *dēfēnsōr*, -ōris, m.

defense of, *prō*, with abl.

delay, n., *mora*, -ae, f.

delay, v., *moror*, -ārī, -ātus sum.

deliver (a speech), *habeō*, -ēre, -uī, -ītus.

deny, *negō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

departure, *profectiō*, -ōnis, f.

deprive, *nūdō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

destroy, *dēlēō*, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.

detain, *retineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.

determine, *cōstituō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtus; *statuō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.

devastate, *populor*, -ārī, -ātus sum.

differ, *differō*, -ferre, *distulī*, *dīlātus*.

difficult, *difficilis*, -e.

difficulty, *difficultās*, -tātis, f.

diligence, *dīligentia*, -ae, f.

diligently, *dīligenter*.

direction, *pars*, *partis*, f.

disappoint, *fallō*, -ere, *fefellī*, *fallus*.

discover, *reperiō*, -īre, *repperī*, *reperitus*.

dismiss, *dīmīttō*, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.

ditch, *fossa*, -ae, f.

do, *agō*, -ere, *ēgī*, *āctus*; *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factus*.

draw up, *īnstruō*, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.

dread, n., *timor*, -ōris, m.

dread, v., *vereor*, -ērī, *veritus* sum.

drive, *agō*, -ere, *ēgī*, *āctus*; *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsus*.

drive out, *expellō*, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus; *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsus*.

dwell, *incolō*, -ere, -uī, —.

E

each, *quisque*, *quidque*.

early, *prīmus*, -a, -um (with noun).

earth, *terra*, -ae, f.

easy, *facilis*, -e.

easily, *facile*.

eight, *octō*.

either . . . or, *vel* . . . *vel*, *aut* . . . *aut*.

encamp, *cōnsidō*, -ere, -sēdī, —.

encourage, *cohortor*, -ārī, -ātus sum.

end, *finis*, -is, m.

enemy, *hostis*, -is, m.; *inimīcus*, -ī, m.

engage (in battle), *committō*, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.

enjoy, *fruor*, *fruī*, *frūctus* sum.

enlist, *cōnscrībō*, -ere, -psī, -ptus.

enroll, *cōnscrībō*, -ere, -psī, -ptus.

enter, *īneō*, -īre, -īī (-īvī), -ītus.

epistle, *epistula*, -ae, f.

equal, *pār*, *paris*.

esteem, honor, -ōris, m.

every, *omnis*, -e; every one, *quisque*, *quidque*.

evident (it is), *cōstat*.

evil, *malus*, -a, -um.

excel, *superō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; *praestō*, -āre, -stīī, -stītus.

excellent, *optimus*, -a, -um.

extend, *pateō*, -ēre, -uī, —.

F

face to face, *adversus*, -a, -um.

facing, *adversus*, -a, -um.

fail, *dēficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.

faith, *fidēs*, -eī, f.

faithful, *fīdus*, -a, -um.

far, *longē*.

farmer, *agricola*, -ae, m.

farther, *ulterior*, -ius.

father, *pater*, -tris, m.

fear, n., *timor*, -ōris, m.

fear, v., *timeō*, -ēre, -uī, —; *vereor*, -ērī, -ītus sum.

few, *paucī*, -ae, -a.

field, *ager*, *agrī*, m.

fiercely, *ācritēr*.

fight, *pugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus. ¹

fill, *compleō*, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.

find out, *reperiō*, -īre, *repperī*, *reptus*; *cognōscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nītus.

fire, *ignis*, -is, m.

first, *prīmus*, -a, -um.

fit, *idōneus*, -a, -um.

five, *quīnque*.

flee, *fugiō*, -ere, *fūgī*, —.

fleet, *classis*, -is, f.

flight, *fuga*, -ae, f.

follow, *sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus* sum.

following, *posterus*, -a, -um.

foot (at), *sub*, with abl.

foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, m.

foot-soldier, *pedes*, -ītis, m.

for, *prō*, with abl.

force, *vīs* (genitive wanting), f.

forces, *cōpiae*, -ārum, f.

forest, *silva*, -ae, f.

former, *prior*, -ius.

fortifications, *moenia*, -ium, n.; *mūnitiō*, -ōnis, f.

fortify, *mūniō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.

four, *quattuor*.

free, v., *liberō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

free, adj., *liber*, -era, -erum.

frequent, *crēber*, -bra, -brum.

friend, *amīcus*, -ī, m.

friendly, *amīcus*, -a, -um.

frighten, *terreō*, -ēre, -uī, -ītus.

from, *ā*, *ab*, *ē*, *ex*, with abl.

front of, *prō*, with abl.

G

Galba, *Galba*, -ae, m.

garrison, *praesidium*, *praesidī*, n.

gate, *porta*, -ae, f.

gather, *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.

Gaul, *Gallia*, -ae, f.

Gauls, *Gallī*, -ōrum, m.

general, *imperātor*, -ōris, m.

German, *Germānus*, -ī, m.

get possession of, *potior*, -īrī, -ītus sum.

gift, *dōnum*, -ī, n.

girl, *puella*, -ae, f.

give, *dō*, -āre, *dedī*, *datus*.

give up, *dēdō*, -ere, -didī, -ditus; *trādō*, -ere, -didī, -ditus.

gladly, *libenter*.

glory, *glōria*, -ae, f.; honor, -ōris, m.

go, *eō*, *īre*, *ivī* (*ivī*), *itūrus*.

go across, *trānseō*, -īre, -ivī (*ivī*), -ītus.

go out, *exeō*, -īre, -ivī (*ivī*), -ītus.

go to, *adeō*, -īre, -ivī (*ivī*), -ītus.

god, *deus*, -ī, m.

goddess, *dea*, -ae, f.

good, *bonus*, -a, -um.

grain, *frūmentum*, -ī, n.

great, *magnus*, -a, -um; so great, *tantus*, -a, -um; how great, *quantus*, -a, -um.

greatly, *magnopere*.

guard, n., *cūstōs*, -ōdis, m.; *praesidium*, *praesidī*, n.

guard, v., *dēfendō*, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.

guide, *dux*, *ducis*, m.

H

hand, *manus*, -ūs, f.
 happen, *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*.
 harm, *noceō*, -ēre, -uī, —.
 hasten, *properō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;
 contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentus.
 have, *habeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
 he, *is*; often not expressed.
 head, *caput*, -itis, n.
 hear, *audiō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
 heavy, *gravis*, -e.
 heavy baggage, *impedimenta*,
 -ōrum, n.
 height, *altitūdō*, -inis, f.
 help, *auxilium*, *auxili*, n.
 Helvetians, *Helvētiī*, -ōrum, m.
 hem in, *contineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
 her, *eius*; *suus*, -a, -um (reflexive).
 high, *altus*, -a, -um; *superus*, -a,
 -um.
 hill, *collis*, -is, m.
 himself, *suī* (reflexive); *ipse*
 (intensive).
 hinder, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
 hindrance, *impedimentum*, -ī, n.
 his, *eius*; *suus*, -a, -um (reflexive).
 hither, *citerior*, -ius.
 hold, *habeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus; *teneō*,
 -ēre, -uī, —.
 hold together, *contineō*, -ēre, -uī,
 -tentus.
 home, *domus*, -ūs, f.; at home,
 domī.
 honor, *honor*, -ōris, m.
 hope, *spēs*, -eī, f.
 horn, *cornū*, -ūs, n.
 horse, *equus*, *equī*, m.
 horseman, *eques*, -itis, m.
 hostage, *obses*, -idis, m. and f.
 hour, *hōra*, -ae, f.

house, *domus*, -ūs, f.
 how, *quam*, *quōmodō*.
 how great, *quantus*, -a, -um.
 how long, *quam diū*.
 how many, *quot*.
 how much, *quantus*, -a, -um.
 hurl, *iaciō*, -ere, *iēcī*, *iactus*.
 hurl together, *coniciō*, -ere, -iēcī,
 -iectus.
 hurry, *properō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

I

I, *ego*, *meī*.
 if, *sī*.
 if not, *nisi*.
 immediately, *statim*.
 immortal, *immortālis*, -e.
 in, *in*, with abl.
 incredible, *incrēdibilis*, -e.
 infantry, *peditēs*, -itum, m.
 inferior, *īnferior*, -ius.
 influence, n., *auctōritās*, -tātis, f.
 influence, v., *adducō*, -ere, -dūxī,
 -ductus.
 inform, *certiōrem facere*; *ēdoceō*,
 -ēre, -uī, -doctus.
 inhabit, *īncolō*, -ere, -uī, —.
 injure, *noceō*, -ēre, -uī, —.
 injury, *īniūria*, -ae, f.
 inner, *īnterior*, -ius.
 instruct, *ēdoceō*, -ere, -uī, -doctus.
 into, *in*, with acc.
 invincible, *invictus*, -a, -um.
 it, *is*, *ea*, *id*; often not expressed.

J

javelin, *pīlum*, -ī, n.
 join, *coniungō*, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-
 tus; *committō*, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-
 sus.
 journey, *iter*, *itineris*, n.; *via*, -ae, f.

judge, *iūdex*, -icis, m.

Julia, *Iūlia*, -ae, f.

Jura, *Iūra*, -ae, m.

K

keep from, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

keep in, *contineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.

keeper, *cūstōs*, -ōdis, m.

kill, *interficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus;

occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus.

king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, m.

know, *sciō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.

L

labor, n., *labor*, -ōris, m.

labor, v., *labōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

land, *terra*, -ae, f.

language, *lingua*, -ae, f.

large, *magnus*, -a, -um.

last, *extrēmus*, -a, -um.

law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.

lay waste, *vāstō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

lead, *dūcō*, -ere, *dūxī*, *ductus*.

lead across, *trādūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.

lead back, *redūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.

lead out, *ēdūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.

lead to, *addūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.

leader, *dux*, *ducis*, m.

learn, *cognōscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nītus.

leave, *relinquō*, -ere, *reliquī*, *relictus*.

left, *sinister*, -tra, -trum.

legion, *legiō*, -ōnis, f.

length, *longitūdō*, -inis, f.

Lentulus, *Lentulus*, -ī, m.

less, *minor*, *minus*.

lest, *nē*, with subjunctive.

letter, *littera*, -ae, f.; *epistula*, -ae, f.

lie open, *pateō*, -ēre, -uī, —.

lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -ī, m.

life, *vita*, -ae, f.

light, n., *lūx*, *lūcis*, f.

light, adj., *levis*, -e.

like, *similis*, -e.

line of battle, *aciēs*, -ēī, f.

line of march, *agmen*, -minis, n.

little, adv., *paulum*.

live, *vivō*, -ere, *vixī*, *victus*.

live in, *incolō*, -ere, -uī, —.

location, *locus*, -ī, m.

long, adj., *longus*, -a, -um.

long, adv., *diū*.

lord, *dominus*, -ī, m.

lose, *āmittō*, -ere, -mīsī, -missus;

dīmītto, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.

love, *amō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

low, *īnferus*, -a, -um.

M

make, *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factus*.

man, *vir*, -ī, m.; *homō*, -inis, m. and f.

manage, *regō*, -ere, *rēxī*, *rēctus*.

manners, pl. of *mōs*, *mōris*, m.

many, *multī*, -ae, -a.

march, v., *iter facere*.

march, n., *iter*, *itineris*, n.

Marcus, *Mārcus*, -ī, m.

marsh, *palūs*, -ūdis, f.

master, *dominus*, -ī, m.; *magister*, -trī, m.

me, see *I*.

meantime, *intereā*.

meet, *occurrō*, -ere, -currī, -cursus.

meeting, *conventus*, -ūs, m.

memory, *memoria*, -ae, f.

merchant, *mercātor*, -ōris, m.

message, *nūntius, nūntī, m.*
 messenger, *nūntius, nūntī, m.*
 middle, *medius, -a, -um.*
 midnight, *media nox.*
 mile, *mīlle passūs.*
 mistress, *domina, -ae, f.*
 mother, *māter, -tris, f.*
 mountain, *mōns, montis, m.*
 move, *moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.*
 move forward, *prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.*
 movement, *mōtus, -ūs, m.*
 much, *multus, -a, -um.*
 must, *dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus;* or
 pass. periphrastic.
 my, *meus, -a, -um.*
 myself, *meī.*

N

name, *nōmen, -inis, n.*
 nation, *nātiō, -ōnis, f.*
 native land, *patria, -ae, f.*
 nature, *nātūra, -ae, f.*
 near, *ad, prope.*
 nearer, *propior, -ius.*
 nearly, *paene, prope.*
 neither, conj., *neque.*
 neither, adj., *neuter, -tra, -trum.*
 nevertheless, *tamen.*
 new, *novus, -a, -um.*
 next, *proximus, -a, -um.*
 night, *nox, noctis, f.*
 nine, *novem.*
 no, *nullus, -a, -um.*
 no one, *nullus, -a, -um; nēmō,*
 —, dat. *nēmīnī.*
 noise, *clāmor, -ōris, m.*
 none, *nullus, -a, -um; nēmō, —,*
 dat. *nēmīnī.*
 nor, *neque.*
 not, *nōn.*

not only . . . but also, *nōn solum*
 . . . *sed etiam.*

nothing, *nihil, indecl., n.*

number, *numerus, -ī, m.*

numerous, *crēber, -bra, -brum.*

O

oath, *iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,*
 n.

obey, *pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —.*

of (concerning), *dē,* with abl.

often, *saepe.*

old, *senex, senis.*

on, *in,* with abl.

on account of, abl. of cause, or ob
 with acc.

on all sides, *undique.*

one, *ūnus, -a, -um.*

one hundred, *centum.*

only, *sōlus, -a, -um.*

opportunity, *facultās, -tātis, f.;*
potestās, -tātis, f.

oppose, *resistō, -ere, restitī, —.*

or, *aut, vel, an.*

oration, *ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.*

order, *iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus*
 (with acc.); *imperō, -āre, -āvī,*
-ātus (with dat.).

other, *alius, -a, -ud.*

ought, *dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*

our, *noster, -tra, -trum.*

out of, *ē, ex,* with abl.

outer, *exterus, -a, -um.*

over, *in,* with abl.

overcome, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*

P

pace, *passus, -ūs, m.*

pacify, *pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*

part, *pars, partis, f.*

pass the winter, *hiemō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, f.

people, *populus*, -ī, m.

peril, *periculum*, -ī, n.

permit, *licet*, -ēre, *licuit*; *patior*, *patī*, *passus sum*.

persuade, *persuādeō*, -ēre, -sī, -sus.

picture, *pictūra*, -ae, f.

pitch (camp), *pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*, *positus*.

place, n., *locus*, -ī, m.

place, v., *pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*, *positus*.

place before, *antepōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positus.

place in command of, *praeficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; *praepōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positus.

plan, *cōsiliū*, *consilī*, n.

please, *placeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

pledge, *fidēs*, -eī, f.

plenty, *cōpia*, -ae, f.

Pompey, *Pompēius*, *Pompēi*, m.

port, *portus*, -ūs, m.

possession (get), *potior*, *potīrī*, *potītus sum*.

possible (as), *quam* with superlative.

power, *potestās*, -tātis, f.

powerful, *potēns*, *potentis*.

praise, *laudō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

prefer, *mālō*, *mālle*, *māluī*; *antepōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positus.

prepare, *parō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

presence, *cōspectus*, -ūs, m.

present, *dōnum*, -ī, n.

private, *privātus*, -a, -um.

prohibit, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

promise, *polliceor*, -ērī, -itus sum.

promote, *prōmoveō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.

protection, *praesidium*, *praesidī*, n.

province, *prōvincia*, -ae, f.

pupil, *discipulus*, -ī, m.

put, *pōnō*, -ere, *pōsuī*, *positus*.

put to flight, *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsus*.

Q

quick, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*.

quickly, *celeriter*.

R

rank, *ōrdō*, -īnis, m.

rather (comparative).

read, *legō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctus*.

rear, *novissimum agmen*.

receive, *accipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.

recently (most), *proximē*.

reckon, *exīstimō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

recruit, *novus mīles*.

region, *regiō*, -ōnis, f.

remain, *maneō*, -ēre, *mānsī*, *mānsus*.

remaining, *reliquus*, -a, -um.

Remi, *Rēmī*, -ōrum, m.

reply, *respondeō*, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus.

report, n., *rūmor*, -ōris, m.

report, v., *nūntiō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; *referō*, -ferre, *rettulī*, -lātus.

republic, *rēs pūblica*, *reī pūblīcae*, f.

repulse, *reiciō*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.

resist, *resistō*, -ere, *restitī*, —.

respects, in all, *omnibus rēbus*.

respond, *respondeō*, -ēre, -dī, -sus.

rest, *reliquus*, -a, -um.

restrain, *retineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.

retain, *retineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.

retreat, *recipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.

return, *revertō*, -ere, -tī, -sus; *re-*
vector, -ī, *reversus sum*.
revolt, *mōtus*, -ūs, m.
revolution, *rēs novae*.
Rhine, *Rhēnus*, -ī, m.
Rhone, *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.
ridge, *iugum*, -ī, n.
right, *dexter*, -tra, -trum.
river, *flūmen*, -inis, n.
road, *via*, -ae, f.
Roman, n. *Rōmānus*, -ī, m.
Roman, adj., *Rōmānus*, -a, -um.
Rome, *Rōma*, -ae, f.
rose, *rosa*, -ae, f.
row, *ōrdō*, -inis, m.
royal power, *rēgnum*, -ī, n.
rule, *regō*, -ere, *rēxī*, *rēctus*.
rumor, *rūmor*, -ōris, m.
run, *currō*, -ere, *cucurrī*, *cursus*.

S

Sabinus, *Sabīnus*, -ī, m.
safe, *tūtus*, -a, -um.
safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, f.
sail, *nāvigō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
sailor, *nauta*, -ae, m.
sake of, *causā*, with genitive.
same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *īdem*.
save, *servō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
say, *dīcō*, -ere, *dīxī*, *dictus*; *loquor*,
loquī, *locūtus sum*.
scarcity, *īnopia*, -ae, f.
scatter, *differō*, -ferre, *distulī*, *dīlā-*
tus.
scout, *explōrātor*, -ōris, m.
sea, *mare*, -is, n.
seashore, *lītus*, -oris, n.
see, *videō*, -ēre, *vīdī*, *vīsus*.
seek, *petō*, -ere, -ī (vī), -ītus.
seem, *videor*, -ērī, *vīsus sum*.

seize, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captus*;
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
select, *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.
senate, *senātus*, -ūs, m.
senator, *senātor*, -ōris, m.
send, *mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *missus*.
send ahead, *praemittō*, -ere, -mīsī,
-i-missus.
send away, *āmittō*, -ere, *āmīsī*,
-āmissus.
send back, *remittō*, -ere, -mīsī,
-i-missus.
send in different directions, *dī-*
mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -i-missus.
Sequanian, *Sēquanus*, -ī, m.
servant, *servus*, -ī, m.; ` *serva*,
-ae, f.
set fire to, *īncendō*, -ere, -cendī,
-cēnsus.
set free, *liberō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
set out, *proficīscor*, -ī, *profectus*
sum.
setting, *occāsus*, -ūs, m.
settle, *cōnsīdō*, -ere, -sēdī, —.
seven, *septem*.
several, *complūrēs*, -a.
severe, *gravīs*, -e.
sharp, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.
sharply, *ācrīter*.
ship, *nāvis*, -is, f.
shore, *lītus*, -oris, n.
short, *brevis*, -e.
shout, *clāmor*, -ōris, m.
show, *doceō*, -ēre, -uī, *doctus*;
mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
shut, *claudō*, -ere, *clausī*, *clausus*.
side, *pars*, *partis*, f.; *latus*, -eris,
n.
sight, *cōnspectus*, -ūs, m.
signal, *signum*, -ī, n.
since, *cum*.

sister, *soror*, -ōris, f.
 six, *sex*.
 six hundred, *sescentī*, -ae, -a.
 size, *magnitūdō*, -inis, f.
 slaughter, *caedēs*, -is, f.
 slave, *servus*, -ī, m.
 slavery, *servitūs*, -ūtis, f.
 slay, *occīdō*, -ere, -cīdī, -cītus; *interficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
 small, *parvus*, -a, -um.
 so, *ita* (manner); *tam* (degree).
 so great, *tantus*, -a, -um.
 soldier, *mīles*, -itis, m.
 some one, *aliquis*, *aliquid*.
 some . . . others, *aliī* . . . *aliī*.
 somewhat, *paulum*.
 son, *fīlius*, *fīli*, m.
 speak, *loquor*, *loquī*, *locūtus sum*.
 speech, *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, f.
 speed, *celeritās*, -tātis, f.
 spend winter, *hiemō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 spy, *explōrātor*, -ōris, m.
 stand, *stō*, -āre, *stetī*, *stātus*.
 standard, *signum*, -ī, n.
 star, *stella*, -ae, f.
 state, *cīvitās*, -tātis, f.; *rēs pūblica*, *reī pūblīcae*, f.
 stone, *lapis*, -idis, m.
 storm, v., *oppugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 storm, n., *tempestās*, -tātis, f.
 stormy weather, *hiems*, *hiemis*, f.
 story, *fābula*, -ae, f.
 strength, *vīrēs*, *vīrium*, f.
 strengthen, *cōnfīrmō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 strip, *nūdō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 subdue, *pācō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 such, *tantus*, -a, -um.
 Suessiones, *Suessiōnēs*, -um, m.

suffer, *patior*, *patī*, *passus sum*.
 suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um.
 summer, *aestās*, -tātis, f.
 summon, *convocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 sun, *sōl*, *sōlis*, m.
 sunset at, *sōlis occūsū*.
 superior, *superior*, -ius.
 supplies, *commeātus*, -ūs, m.
 supply, *cōpia*, -ae, f.
 surpass, *superō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; *praestō*, -āre, -stītī, -stitus.
 surrender, n., *dēditiō*, -ōnis, f.
 surrender, v., *dēdō*, -ere, -didī, -ditus; *trādō*, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
 survive, *supersum*, -esse, -fuī.
 suspicion, *suspīciō*, -ōnis, f.
 swamp, *palūs*, -ūdis, f.
 swift, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*; *vēlōx*, *vēlōcis*.
 swiftly, *celeriter*.
 swiftness, *celeritās*, -tātis, f.
 sword, *gladius*, *gladī*, m.

T

table, *mēnsa*, -ae, f.
 take, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captus*; *sūmō*, -ere, *sūmpsī*, *sūmptus*.
 take back, *recipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
 take by storm, *expugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 tall, *altus*, -a, -um; *longus*, -a, -um.
 teach, *doceō*, -ēre, -uī, *doctus*.
 teacher, *magister*, -trī, m.
 tell, *nārrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 ten, *decem*.
 tenth, *decimus*, -a, -um.
 territory, pl. of *fīnis*, -is, m.
 than, *quam*.

that, conj., *ut*; not expressed after verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.

that, demon. pron., *is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud*.

that of yours, *iste, ista, istud*.

that, rel. pron., *quī, quae, quod*.

theirs, gen. pl. of *is*; *suus, -a, -um*, (reflexive).

there, *ibi*.

thing, *rēs, reī, f.*

think, *putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum; existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.

third, *tertius, -a, -um*.

this, *hic, haec, hoc*.

thousand, *mille*.

three, *trēs, tria*.

through, *per*, with acc.

throw, *iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus*.

throw back, *reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus*.

time, *tempus, -oris, n.*

tired, *dēfessus, -a, -um*.

to, *ad*, with acc.

toil, labor, *-ōris, m.*

tongue, *lingua, -ae, f.*

top, *summus, -a, -um*.

torture, *cruciātus, -ūs, m.*

toward, *ad*, with acc.

tower, *turris, -is, f.*

town, *oppidum, -ī, n.*

tree, *arbor, -oris, f.*

trench, *fossa, -ae, f.*

troops, *cōpiae, -ārum, f.*

trumpet, *tuba, -ae, f.*

trust, *crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus*.

try, *cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum*.

tumult, *tumultus, -ūs, m.*

twenty-five, *vīgintī quīnque*.

two, *duo, duae, duo*.

two hundred, *ducentī, -ae, -a*.

U

unconquerable, *invictus, -a, -um*.

under, *sub*, see 335.

understand, *intellegō, -ere, -ēxī, -lēctus*.

undertake, *incipiō, -ere; -cēpī, -ceptus*.

unfriendly, *inimīcus, -a, -um*.

unite, *coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tus*.

unless, *nisi*.

unlike, *dissimilis, -e*.

unwilling, *nōlō, nōlle, nōluī*.

upon, *in* (with acc. or abl.).

upper, *superior, -ius*.

us, pl. of *ego*.

use, *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum*.

useful, *ūtilis, -e*.

useless, *inūtilis, -e*.

V

vain (in), *frūstrā*.

valor, *virtūs, -ūtis, f.*

van, *primum agmen*.

Veneti, *Venetī, -ōrum, m.*

very (superlative).

victor, *victor, -ōris, m.*

victory, *victōria, -ae, f.*

view, *cōspectus, -ūs, m.*

village, *vīcus, -ī, m.*

violence, *vīs*, (genitive wanting), *f.*

virtue, *virtūs, -ūtis, f.*

visit, *adeō, -īre, -īvī, -itus*.

voice, *vōx, vōcis, f.*

W

wage, *gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus*.

wall, *mūrus, -ī, m.*

want, *inopia*, -ae, f.
 war, *bellum*, -ī, n.
 warn, *moneō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
 war-ship, *nāvis longa*.
 watch, *vigilia*, -ae, f.; *cūstōs*,
 -ōdis, m.
 water, *aqua*, -ae, f.
 way, *via*, -ae, f.
 we, *nōs*.
 weapon, *tēlum*, -ī, n.
 weary, *dēfessus*, -a, -um.
 weather (stormy), *hiems*, *hiemis*,
 f.; *tempestās*, -tātis, f.
 well, *bene*.
 what, *quīs*, *quid* (substantive);
 quī, *quae*, *quod* (adjective).
 when, *cum*, *ubi*.
 where, *ubi*.
 wherefore, *cūr*.
 whether, *utrum*, *num*.
 which, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.
 which of two, *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*.
 white, *albus*, -a, -um.
 who, *quī*, *quae*, *quod* (relative);
 quis, *quid* (interrog.).
 whole, *tōtus*, -a, -um.
 why, *cūr*, *quamobrem*.
 wide, *lātus*, -a, -um.
 width, *lātitudō*, -inis, f.
 willing, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.
 wind, *ventus*, -ī, m.
 wing (of an army), *cornū*, -ūs, n.
 winter, n., *hiems*, *hiemis*, f.
 winter quarters, *hīberna*, -ōrum,
 n.

wisely, *sapienter*.
 wish, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.
 with, *cum*, with abl.
 withdraw, *exeō*, -īre, -iī (-īvī),
 -itus; *redūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-
 tus.
 without, *sine*, with abl.
 withstand, *sustineō*, -ēre, -uī,
 -tentus.
 woman, *fēmina*, -ae, f.
 woods, *silva*, -ae, f.
 word, *verbum*, -ī, n.
 work, n., *opera*, -ae, f.
 work, v., *labōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 worn out, *dēfessus*, -a, -um.
 worse, *peior*, *peius*.
 would that, *utinam*.
 wound, n., *vulnus*, -eris, n.
 wound, v., *vulnerō*, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātus.
 wretched, *miser*, -era, -erum.
 write, *scrībō*, -ere, *scrīpsī*,
 scrīptus.
 wrong, *iniūria*, -ae, f.

Y

year, *annus*, -ī, m.
 yet, *tamen*.
 yoke, *iugum*, -ī, n.
 you, *tū*, *tuī*.
 young, *iuvenis*, -e.
 young man, *adulēscēns*, -centis, m.
 your, *tuus*, -a, -um; *vester*, -tra,
 -trum.
 yourself, *tuī* (reflexive).

INDEX

References are to sections

A

ā or **ab** with ablative of agent,
140, 620;
place whence, 76, 617;
place in which, 76, 617.

abbreviations, 561.

ablative case,

absolute, 463, 464, 632;
adverbially, 383;
of accompaniment, 102, 618;
after a comparative, 221, 624;
of agent, 140, 620;
of cause, 195, 622;
of degree of difference, 247,
383, 625;
of manner, 114, 619;
of means, 65, 616;
of quality, 441, 631;
of separation, 316, 627;
of specification, 204, 623;
of time, 147, 621;
with *utor*, etc., 375, 630;
with prepositions, 332, 628;
with *dē* or *ex* instead of the
genitive of the whole, 260,
626;
with *quaerō* and *petō*, 400, 439.

accent, see Introduction.

accompaniment, 102, 618.

accusative case,

adverbially, 382, 615;
of direct object, 16, 610;
duration of time, 286, 612;

extent of space, 286, 612;
place whither, 76, 278, 611;
subject of infinitive, 307, 613;
with prepositions, 333, 614.

ācer, declension, 570;

comparison, 576.

ācriter, comparison, 578.

ad, with accusative, place to
which, 76, 611.

adjectives, 674, 678;

agreement of, 40, 637;

kinds of, 36, 144;

of first and second declen-
sions, 36;

of third declension, one termi-
nation, 158; two termina-
tions, 152; three termina-
tions, 144, *a*;

of peculiar declension, 290;

comparison, regular, 214, 678,
irregular, 225, 226, 234, 235,
236, 237, 577; with *magis*
and *maximē*, 237.

meaning of comparatives, 214,
a;

meaning of superlatives, 214, *a*;
declension of comparatives,
217, 573;

declension of superlatives, 218;

ending in *er*, 225;

five ending in *lis*, 226;

with dative, 230, 269, 603, 604;

numerals, 326, 579, 676.

References are to sections

- adverbs**, 703-706; derivation, 243;
 formation, 243;
 comparison, 244;
 adverbial accusative, 382, 615.
- agent**, expressed by ablative with *ā* or *ab*, 140, 620;
 expressed by dative with passive periphrastic, 531, 609.
- ager**, declension, 564.
- agreement of adjectives**, 40, 637;
 of appositives, 187, 635;
 of possessive pronouns, 415, *a*, 418;
 of relative pronouns, 395, 638;
 of verb with subject, 17, 636.
- aliquis**, declension, 585.
- alius**, declension, 574.
- alphabet**, see Introduction.
- amicus**, declension, 564.
- answers**, 20, 68, 97.
- article**, see Introduction.
- audiō**, 589.
- B**
- base**, 6, *b*.
- bellum**, declension, 564.
- bene**, comparison, 578.
- bonus**, declension, 569.
 comparison, 577.
- C**
- Caesar Phrases**, 151, 175, 242, 250, 281, 331, 339, 437, 462, 526.
- capiō**, conjugation, 590.
- caput**, declension, 106.
- cardinals**, 676; list of, 326, 579;
 indeclinable, 326, *a*.
- cases**, names and uses, 2, 669-672.
- causal clauses**, 471; 473, 2; 644.
- cause**, expressed by ablative, 195, 622.
- circumstantial clauses**, 470, 643.
- citerior**, comparison, 236, 577.
- commands**, 496.
- comparative**, declension, 216, 217, 573; followed by ablative, 221, 624; meaning, 214, *a*.
- comparison of adjectives**,
 regular, 214;
 irregular, 225, 226, 234, 235, 236, 237, 577;
 positive wanting, 236;
 ending in *er*, 225;
 six ending in *lis*, 226;
 of adverbs, 243, 578.
- complementary infinitive**, 176, 649.
- composition**, 150, 179.
- compound nouns**, 266, *a*, *b*.
- compound verbs**, 419.
- concessive clauses**, 472, 645.
- conditional sentences**, 478-482, 646, 647.
- conjugations**, 107;
 how distinguished, 107;
portō, 586;
moneō, 587;
dūcō, 588;
audiō, 589;
capiō, 590;
sum, *possum*, 591;
volō, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 592;
ferō, 593;
eō, 594;
fiō, 595.
- conjunctions**, 708.

References are to sections

consonants, how pronounced, see Introduction.
consul, declension, 565.
cornū, declension, 566.
corpus, declension, 106.
cum clauses, 469.

D

dative case,
 of agent, 531, 609;
 with adjectives, 230, 269, 603, 604;
 with compound verbs, 419, 606;
 of indirect object, 56, 602;
 with intransitive verbs, 499, 605;
 of possessor, 514, 608;
 of purpose, 508, 607.
dē or ex, with ablative instead of genitive of the whole, 260, 626.
dea, declension, 568.
declensions, how distinguished, 22.
 first, 5, 563;
 second, 22, 32, 564;
 third, 90, 91, 99, 106, 118, 119, 565;
 fourth, 256, 566;
 fifth, 264, 567.
definite measurements, 441, *a*, 601.
demonstrative pronouns, 431, 582.
deponent verbs, 370.
descriptive, ablative, or genitive, 441, 600, 631.
deus, declension, 568.
diēs, declension, 265, 567.

difficilis, comparison, 226.
diphthongs, pronunciation, see Introduction.
direct object, 16, 610.
diū, comparison, 578.
domus, declension, 568;
 in expressions of place, 278, 634.
double questions, 438.
dūcō, conjugation, 588.
duo, declension, 575.

E

ē or ex, place out of which, 76, 617.
ego, declension, 580.
English Grammar, 653–715.
English-Latin Letter, 556.
eō, conjugation, 594.
esse, often omitted, 447².
ex with ablative instead of genitive of the whole, 260, 626.
exercitus, declension, 566.
extent of space, 286, 612.
exterus, comparison, 577.

F

facile, comparison, 578.
facilis, comparison, 576.
fearing, verbs of, 353¹.
feminine gender, see Introduction.
ferō, conjugation, 593.
filius, vocative, 23, *b*.
fīō, conjugation, 595.
flūmen, declension, 565.
fortis, declension, 571;
 comparison, 576.
fortiter, comparison, 578.
frāter, declension, 565.

References are to sections

fruor, followed by ablative, 375, 630.
future tense, formation, 51, 181.
future perfect, formation, 72, 135.

G

gender, 667; rules for, see Introduction;
 in first declension, 5;
 in second declension, 22, 32;
 in third declension, 90;
 in fourth declension, 256;
 in fifth declension, 264.
genitive case,
 of description or quality, 441, 600;
 of definite measurement, 441, *a*, 601;
 of the whole, 260, 599;
 of possession, 27, 598.
gerund, 517.
gerundive, 518.
 gerundive construction, 519;
 takes dative of agent, 531, 609;
 used with *ad* to express purpose, 522³;
 used with *causā* to express purpose, 522⁴;
 used with *sum* to form passive periphrastic, 528;
 with *sum* implies duty or necessity, 528.

H

hic, declension, 582.
historical tenses, 363.
hostis, declension, 565;
 distinguished from *inimicus*, 267.

I

i, takes place of **j**, Introduction.
i-stems, 118, 119.
idem, declension, 582.
idōneus, comparison, 577.
ignis, declension, 565.
ille, declension, 582.
imperative, 494, 692.
imperfect, distinguished from perfect, 50¹, 73².
imperō, governs dative and subjunctive, 361.
impersonal verbs, 534.
in, with accusative and ablative, 334.
indefinite pronouns, 444.
indirect discourse, 303, 304, 402, 554, 652.
indirect object, 56, 602.
indirect question, 402, 642.
inferus, comparison, 577.
infinitives, 693, 694;
 formation, 302;
 complementary, 176, 649;
 used as subject, 476¹;
 in indirect discourse, 303, 554, 652;
 takes accusative as subject, 307, 613;
 time denoted by, 304, 648;
 in compounds *esse* omitted, 447²;
 not used to express purpose, 353.
inflection, 673, 685.
inimicus, distinguished from *hostis*, 267.
instrumental ablative, 65, 616.
intensive pronoun, 432.
interior, comparison, 577.

References are to sections

interjections, 709.
 interrogative pronouns, 399.
 iō verbs of the third conjugation,
 320, 590.
 ipse, declension, 582.
 irregular adjectives, comparison,
 225, 226, 234, 235, 236, 237,
 577.
 irregular verbs, *sum*, 591.
 possum, *eō*, *ferō*, *fīō*, *volō*, *nōlō*,
 mālō, 591–595.
 is, declension, 582;
 used as pronoun, 406.
 iste, declension, 582.
 iubeō, governs infinitive, 433.
 iūdex, declension, 99.
 iuvenis, comparison, 577.

J

j, supplied by i, see Introduction.

L

lātē, comparison, 578.
 Latin Phrases, 560.
 Latin in Science, 557.
 Latin words in the Constitution,
 559.
 Latin Quotations, 562.
 Latin Songs, pages 215–218.
 length of syllables, Introduction.
 length of vowels, Introduction.
 liber } English derivatives, 100.
 liberō }
 locative case, 278.
 locus, gender, 267.
 long vowels, see Introduction.
 longior, declension, 217.

M

magis, used in comparison, 237.
 magnopere, comparison, 578.

magnus, comparison, 577;
 declension, 37.
 male, comparison, 578.
 mālō, conjugation, 592.
 malus, comparison, 577.
 manner, ablative of, 114, 619.
 mare, declension, 565.
 masculine gender, see Introduction.
 means, ablative of, 65, 616.
 melior, declension, 573.
 meus, 415.
 mile, how expressed, 283, *a*.
 miles, declension, 565.
 mille, how used, 283.
 miser, declension, 60;
 comparison, 576.
 miserē, comparison, 578.
 moneō, 587.
 multus, comparison, 577.

N

nē, introducing negative clause
 of purpose, 353;
 introducing negative com-
 mands, 348, 496;
 after verbs of fearing, 353¹.
 ne, enclitic, 20.
 neuter gender, see Introduction.
 nōlō, conjugation, 592.
 nominative case, 670;
 subject of finite verb, 15, 596;
 of pronouns expressed only
 for emphasis, 412¹;
 predicate nominative, 28, 597,
 712.
 nōnne, 68.
 nōs, declension, 580.
 noster, formation and declen-
 sion, 415, *a*.

References are to sections

nouns, 653–658 ;
 first declension, 5, 563 ;
 second declension, 22, 32, 564 ;
 third declension, 90, 99, 106,
 118, 565.
 fourth declension, 256, 566 ;
 fifth declension, 264, 567 ;
 compound nouns, 266 ;
 parsing, 94.
num, 68.
number, 668.
numerals, list of, 579 ;
 indeclinable, 326, *a*.

O

object, direct, 16, 610, 672, 711 ;
 indirect, 56, 602.
Oral Exercises, 21, 31, 59, 69,
 83, 98, 105, 117, 125, 143,
 166, 191, 198, 207, 224, 233,
 272, 289, 295, 312, 319, 325,
 351, 358, 369, 378, 386, 398,
 405, 414, 422, 430.
ordinals, list of, 579.

P

pāreō, governs dative, 499.
parsing, nouns, 94 ;
 verbs, 188.
participles, 455, 702 ;
 agreement, 456 ;
 declension, 456 ;
 time denoted, 457 ;
 how translated, 456, *a* ;
 future, with *sum* to form active
 periphrastic, 527 ;
 in deponent verbs, 370, *a*.
partitive genitive, 260¹.
parum, comparison, 578.
parvus, comparison, 577.

passive, compound forms, 135.
penult, when accented, see In-
 troduction.
perfect, distinguished from im-
 perfect, 50¹, 73².
periphrastic conjugations, 527,
 528.
personal endings, 11, 71, 132.
personal pronouns, 406, 660 ;
 supplied by *is*, 406.
petō, governs accusative and ab-
 lative, 439.
phrases, Latin, 560.
place, whence, where, whither,
 76 ;
 with names of towns, etc.,
 278.
portō, conjugation, 586.
possession, genitive of, 27, 598.
possessive pronouns, 415.
possessor, dative of, 514, 608.
possum, composition, 173 ;
 conjugation, 591.
posterus, comparison, 577.
postquam, in temporal clauses,
 473¹.
potēns, declension, 572.
potior, governs ablative, 375,
 630.
predicate nominative, 28, 597,
 712.
prepositions, 707 ; govern accu-
 sative, 333, 614 ; govern ab-
 lative, 332, 628.
principal parts of verbs, 45 ;
 why so called, 45.
principal tenses, 363.
prior, comparison, 577.
pronouns, personal, 406, 660 ;
 order, 412¹ ;

References are to sections

pronouns, reflexive, 407, 665;
 possessive, 415;
 agreement, 415, *a*;
 gender, 418; used substantively, 420²; demonstrative, 431, 663; intensive, 432; interrogative, 399, 662; relative, 392, 395, 661; indefinite, 444, 664.

pronunciation, see Introduction.

propior, comparison, 577.

puer, declension, 564.

pulcher, declension, 61.

pulchrē, comparison, 578.

purpose, clauses of,

subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*, 353;
 522, 1; 640;

subjunctive with *quī*, 396¹,
 522, 2;

gerundive construction with
ad, 522, 3;

gerundive construction with
causā, 522, 4;

expressed by the dative, 508–
 607;

not expressed by infinitive, 353.

Q

quaerō, governs accusative and
 ablative, 400.

quality, genitive, 441, 600; abla-
 tive, 441, 631.

quam, omitted after comparative,
 221, 624;

when used, 221¹.

quamquam, with indicative, 473,
 3.

quantity, vowels and syllables,
 see Introduction.

questions, direct, 20; indirect,
 402; double, 438.

quī, declension, 583.

quī, equivalent to *ut* and personal
 pronoun, 396¹.

quis, declension, 584.

quod, in causal clauses, 473, 2.

quoniam, in causal clauses, 473, 2.

quotations, Latin, 562.

R

Readings:

Via Appia, 44;

Carolus et Poma, 89;

Equus Marci, 131;

Cincinnatus, 172;

Magnus Imperator, 212;

Cornelia et Ornamenta, 255;

Forum Romanum, 301;

Tarpeia, 346;

Nasica et Ennius, 391;

Fabulae Faciles, 454;

Domus Romana, 493;

Virgines Vestales, 539; *170*

Caesar, pages 262–273.

reflexive pronouns, 407, 665.

relative pronouns, 392, 661.

rēs, declension, 567.

result, clauses of, 379, 641.

review, Lessons 9, 14, 19, 24, 29,
 35, 41, 47, 56, 61, 68, 69,
 70, 71.

of cases, Lessons 68, 69.

of subjunctives, Lesson 70.

S

semi-deponent verbs, 511.

senex, comparison, 577.

separation, ablative of, 316, 627

sequence of tenses, 364.

References are to sections

- sī**, introducing conditions, 478.
Sight Reading, 88, 130, 171, 211, 254, 263, 300, 345, 390, 453, 492.
similis, governing dative, 230; governing genitive, 230¹.
Songs, pages 215–218.
soror, declension, 91.
space, extent of, 286, 612.
specification, ablative of, 204, 623.
State Mottoes, 558.
stem, of nouns, 118, *a*; of verbs, 46.
sub with accusative and ablative, 334.
subject, of finite verb, 15, 596; agreement of verb, 17, 636; of infinitive, 307, 613; not expressed, 11.
subjunctive, translation, 347, *a*; in causal clauses, 471, 644; in circumstantial clauses, 470, 643; in concessive clauses, 492, 645; in conditional clauses, 480, 482, 646, 647; in purpose clauses, 353, 640; in result clauses, 379, 641; in temporal clauses, 470¹; in indirect discourse, 554, 652; in indirect questions, 402, 642; volitive, 348, 639.
suī, declension, 581.
sum, conjugation, 591.
superus, comparison, 577.
suus, formation and declension, 415.
syllables, how many, how divided, quantity, see Introduction.
synopsis, 686.
- T**
- temporal clauses**, 470¹.
tenses, 695–700; principal and historical, 363; sequence of, 364.
time, when, 147, 621; duration of, 286, 612.
towns, construction with names of, 278, 634.
trēs, declension, 575.
tū, declension, 580.
tuba, declension, 563.
tuus, formation and declension, 415.
- U**
- ubi**, in temporal clauses, 473, 1.
ulterior, comparison, 577.
ūnus, declension, 574.
urbs, declension, 565.
ut, introducing clauses of purpose, 353, 641; of result, 379, 642; of negative result (*ut nōn*), 379, 642; with verbs of fearing, 353¹, 641; translated “as” when followed by the indicative, see Vocabulary.
ūtor, governs ablative, 375, 630.
utrum . . . an, 438.
- V**
- vēlōx**, comparison, 576.
verbs, 679–702; agreement with subject, 17, 636;

References are to sections

- verbs**, personal endings, 11, 71, 132;
 first conjugation, 586;
 second conjugation, 587;
 third conjugation, 588;
 fourth conjugation, 589;
 conjugations distinguished, 107;
 stems, how found, 47, 70, 135;
 deponents, 370;
 why so called, 370¹;
 how distinguished, 370;
 compounded with preps., 419, 606;
 impersonal, 534, 682;
 parsing, 188;
- irregular, see *sum*, *possum*, *eō*,
ferō, *fīō*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.
vester, formation and declension,
 415.
vir, declension, 564.
vis, declension, 568.
Vocabularies, Latin-English, page
 295;
 English-Latin, page 299.
vocative case, 2, 6, *a*, 633; form
 of, 23, *a* and *b*.
volitive subjunctive, 348, 639.
volō, conjugation, 592.
vowels, quantity, long, short, see
 Introduction.

LATIN

New Latin Composition

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 286 pages. Price, \$1.00. Bound separately:

Part I, 12mo, cloth, 144 pages. Price, 60 cents.

Parts II-III, 12mo, cloth, 176 pages. Price, 60 cents.

THIS book is intended to furnish enough material for all the work in Latin Composition in the secondary school. The author's conviction is that the primary function of Latin Composition in high schools is to extend and strengthen the pupil's knowledge of Latin Grammar. The principles of syntax are arranged in the systematic order of the grammars and are illustrated by disconnected sentences.

Each lesson contains first grammatical principles, with references to the standard grammars. These are followed by simple illustrative sentences, a vocabulary, and then by well-graded sentences to be put into Latin.

The book is arranged in three parts, as follows:—

Part I contains thirty lessons, using the vocabulary and constructions of Cæsar. The model sentences are taken from Cæsar and labelled with the point which each illustrates. There are fifteen exercises in connected composition scattered through the lessons. Two systematic general reviews are furnished.

Part II has the same plan, but is based on Cicero.

Part III contains exercises in connected discourse, with footnotes referring to the grammatical points illustrated. There are specimen examination papers and a complete vocabulary.

Latin Composition

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 16mo cloth, 172 pages. Price, 80 cents.

IN scope and plan the Composition is the same as the Latin Writer; the grammatical principles illustrated are identical and the two books may be used in alternate years. The difference is that the words in the Latin Composition are taken mainly from Cicero, while those in the Latin Writer are from Cæsar.

A Junior Latin Book

With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabulary, by Professors JOHN C. ROLFE, University of Pennsylvania, and WALTER DENNISON, Swarthmore College. Revised edition. 12mo, half leather, 566 pages. Price, \$1.25.

THIS book will appeal to teachers who believe in reading a book of selections in the second year instead of the ordinary course in Cæsar.

The Contents are:—

Three Pages of Fables.

Selections based on Eutropius, covering Roman History to the time of Cicero.

Viri Romæ—The Lives of Cæsar, Cicero, and Augustus.

Nepos—The Lives of Miltiades, Themistocles, Pausanias, Epaminondas, Hamilcar, Hannibal, and Cato.

Cæsar's Gallic War, Books I and II.

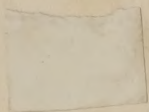
Cæsar's Civil War, Selections from Books I, II, III.

The book contains exercises in Latin Composition based on the first and second books of Cæsar, also an English-Latin vocabulary, and maps of Ancient Italy, Rome and Environs, Greece and the Ægean Sea, Asia Minor, Gaul, the Roman Empire, and six colored maps and plans to illustrate the battles of Cæsar. There are also six full-page colored plates, giving a vivid and accurate picture of the costumes, equipment, weapons, and standards of the Roman army.

Gradatim

An Easy Latin Translation Book for Beginners. By H. R. HEATLEY and H. N. KINGDON. Revised by J. W. SCUDDER, Latin Master in the Albany Academy. 16mo, cloth, 230 pages. Price, 50 cents.

GRADATIM offers an excellent selection of easy reading-matter which will serve to arouse the interest of the pupil in his early study of Latin. It may be used either for lessons to be regularly prepared by classes just beginning the subject, or for sight-reading by more advanced students. The special excellence of Gradatim lies in the intrinsic interest of the stories.





UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS-URBANA



3 0112 049982165